Synthetic Studies of Amide－functionalized Helicene－like Molecules

アミド基を持つへリセン様分子の合成研究

2020
Yongning Xing

## Table of Contents

List of Abbreviations ..... iii
Theoretical Section
Foreword .....  .1
Chapter 1: Introduction
1.1 General introduction of helicenes and heterohelicenes ..... 3
1.2 Examples of synthesis of amide-functionalized helicenes and helicene-like molecules ..... 6
1.3 Background and design of the synthetic strategies to amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules .....  .9
Chapter 2: Synthesis of an amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule via lactamization of biphenanthryl monomethyl ester and its structural analysis
2.1 Preparation of monomethyl ester for the lactamization ..... 13
2.2 Transformation to amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules via lactamization ..... 17
2.3 The X-Ray analysis of racemic mixture of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule. ..... 19
Chapter 3: One-pot access to amide-functioanlized [7]helicene-like molecules and phenanthridinone derivatives from biaryl dicarboxylic acids
3.1 Optimization of reaction conditions and extension to phenanthridinone synthesis ..... 27
3.2 Synthesis of racemic and enantiopure amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules via direct one-pot cyclization ..... 31
3.3 Mechanistic consideration of the one-pot cyclization ..... 38
Chapter 4: Preparation of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules by palladium-catalyzed domino reactions
4.1 Preparation of the substrates for palladium-catalyzed domino reaction ..... 40
4.2 Synthesis of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule via palladium-catalyzed domino reaction ..... 43
4.3 Deprotection of PMB group of the domino reaction product and oxidation of sulfur atoms ..... 48
4.4 Racemization barriers and chiroptical properties ..... 50
4.4.1 Racemization barriers of amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules ..... 50
4.4.2 Comparison of optical rotations of helicene and helicene-like molecules ..... 57
4.4.3 CD spectra of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules ..... 58
Conclusion and perspective ..... 61
References ..... 62
Experimental Section

1. General information ..... 69
2. Experiments in Chapter 2 ..... 70
3. Experiments in Chapter 3 ..... 80
4. Experiments in Chapter 4 ..... 108
5. References ..... 125
6. HPLC charts ..... 126
7. Calculation data ..... 129
Acknowledgements ..... 157

## List of abbreviation

| AcOEt | ethyl acetate |
| :---: | :---: |
| aq. | aqueous |
| $n \mathrm{Bu}$ | normal butyl |
| cat. | catalyst |
| DBU | diazabicycloundecene |
| DCC | dicyclohexylcarbodiimide |
| DIPEA | diisopropylethylamine |
| DPPA | diphenylphosphoryl azide |
| DMA | dimethylacetamide |
| DMAP | 4-dimethylaminopyridine 4-dimethylaminopyridine |
| DMF | $\mathrm{N}, \mathrm{N}$-dimethylformamide |
| DMSO | dimethylsulfoxide |
| ee | enantiomeric excess |
| ESI | electrospray ionization |
| FAB | fast-atom ionization |
| HOBT | 1-hydroxybenzotriazole |
| HPLC | high performance liquid chromatography |
| HRMS | high resolution mass spectrometer |
| IR | infrared |
| Me | methyl |
| min | minute |
| mp | melting point |
| ND | not detected |
| NMR | nuclear magnetic resonance |
| PTLC | preparative thin-layer chromatography |
| PMB | $p$-methoxybenzene |
| PMP | p-mehoxyphenyl |
| TFA | trifluoroacetic acid |
| THF | tetrahydrofuran |
| TS | transition state |
| UV | ultraviolet |

Theoretical Section

## Foreword

During the past one hundred and twenty years, helicenes gradually draw more and more attention because of the diversity of helical aromatic structures and various functionalizations, ${ }^{1}$ which make helicenes to be unique $\pi$-conjugated systems provided with special chemical properties ${ }^{2}$ and wide range of applications. ${ }^{3}$ Possessing inherent chirality, helicenes are believed to be chiral elements and show particular chiroptical properties with introduction of different functional groups. The ability of self-assembly promotes helicenes to be highlighted in the area of organic materials. ${ }^{4}$

A specific attention has been paid to heterohelicenes and heterohelicene-like molecules, bearing hetero-functional groups as constituent moieties in helical backbones, generally because of their special properties, interesting chemical behaviors and therefore varieties of potential applications as chiral elements in organic materials, chiral catalysts, ${ }^{5}$ and bioactive compounds. ${ }^{6}$ Since there's a growing demand of these attractive helical molecules, it becomes highly desirable to synthesize hetero-functionalized helicenes or helicene-like molecules with concise synthetic strategies.

Among heterohelicenes and heterohelicene-like molecules, amide-functionalized helicenes and helicene-like molecules, bearing the amide functional group at the periphery of the helical backbones especially draw the author's interests, as shown below, through the synthetic background as described in Chapter 1.


Compared with carbohelicenes, the amide group inserted into helix will offer the potential to obtain a variety of functionalized helical structures, and there will be a possibility of adding sulfonyl groups on the helicene outer core which might change the acidity of amide, induce new molecular recognition areas and change other helical properties by the replacement of thiophene ring instead of benzene ring. These amide-functionalized molecules might also show special selfassembly phenomenon with amide groups through intramolecular hydrogen-bonding interaction.

The self-assembling property is a key feature for exhibiting the functions of helicene molecules. ${ }^{7}$ Therefore, the amide-functionalized helicene and helicene-like molecules would be promising as functionalized structures which exhibit special properties through molecular assembly. Therefore, the author motivated development of the new and concise synthetic methods towards heterohelicenes and heterohelicene-like molecules.

## Chapter 1 <br> Introduction

### 1.1 General introduction of helicenes and heterohelicenes

Helicenes are a kind of unique $\pi$-conjugated and characteristically helical polyaromatic compounds, which mainly consist of ortho-fused benzene or other aromatic rings with nonplanar screw-shaped skeletons and show a distinctive helical chirality (Figure 1-1). ${ }^{8,9}$ Particularly, heterohelicenes are a significant class of helicenes, which are usually represented as helical heteroaromatics and generally considered to be composed of ortho (or mostly ortho) condensed benzene, pyridine, pyrrole, thiophene, furan and other heterocyclic rings to form a helical backbone. Additionally, they can be fused and functionalized.

Besides the traditional definition of helicene and heterohelicene molecules, there also exist helical structures (Figure 1-1), called helicene-like molecules. Helicene-like molecules usually contain at least one saturated atom as a part of the fused rings in the helicene-type core system. In the case of the author's target compounds $\mathbf{1 a}$ and $\mathbf{1 b}$, since the tautomerism configuration of amide is not definite, whilst pyridin- $2(1 \mathrm{H})$-one moiety is not an aromatic ring, the molecules therefore are called [7]helicene-like molecules.

aza[5]helicene


Figure 1-1. Examples of helicene, heterohelicene and helicene-like molecules (for selected examples see: ref. 8, 9)

The structural features and helicity are described with [6]helicene as example (Figure 1-2). The helicene's inner core can be distinguished that the helix experiences steric clashes towards the inner side. On the contrary, the outer skeleton of the helicene is called the helicene's outer core. The benzene rings at the beginning and at the end of the helical arrangement are called the terminal or peripheral rings. This structural organization results in a helical chiral cavity (Figure 1-2A).

In general, helicene exists as helically chiral molecule in the case of the terminal aromatic moieties, leading to steric repulsion. The helical structure is assigned the name $(P)$-enantiomer
observed as right-handed helix (clockwise moving from up to down) or ( $M$ )-enantiomer observed as left-handed helix (anti clockwise moving from up to down) (Figure 1-2B).

Due to the ortho-fusion mode, each aromatic ring contributes to the total helicity of the structure through an in-plane turn angle (Figure 1-2C). The molecule is forced to adopt a helically chiral structure when the sum of the in-plane angles of the rings in helicene core becomes $360^{\circ}$ or more, caused by the corresponding steric clashes among the terminal/peripheral rings.


Figure 1-2. (A) Explanation of terms used for helicene structures and chiral cavity; (B) Helicity and enantiomers of [6]helicene; (C) Comparison of the in-plane turn angles $(\theta)$ of different rings.

Helicenes show particularly attractive chiroptical properties because of their helical shape, $\pi$ electronic conjugation, self-assembly and other features, such as circular dichroism (CD) which gives the structural information about the electronic ground state. Because of inherent chirality and functional groups, heterohelicenes have the potential of a series of promising applications in asymmetric catalysis, ${ }^{3 i, 5}$ enantioselective molecular recognition and chiroptical or electro-optical functional materials. ${ }^{4}$ Besides, heterohelicenes, especially thiahelicenes, might show biological activities such as protein inhibitors and interactions with DNA acting as a new scaffold for new drugs. ${ }^{6}$ Several examples are displayed in Figure 1-3.


A


B
Superior CPL
(emission of circularly polarized light) property with self-assembly


D


II

Figure 1-3. Representative applications of helicenes (For A, see ref. 6f; Figure I is the schematic representation of column of stacked helicene molecules $\mathbf{B}$ as observed in solid bulk samples, see ref. 4 b ; For $\mathbf{C}$, see ref. 3 i ; Figure II is the schematic representation of the formation of fibrous aggregations from the trimeric disk of compound $\mathbf{D}$ dissolved in toluene, see ref. 4c)

### 1.2 Examples of synthesis of amide-functionalized helicenes and helicene-like molecules

Since the first helicene was synthesized, there has been 120 years. Till now, more and more new methods of synthesis of helicenes with satisfactory results have been developed. However, the examples of synthesis of amide-functionalized helicenes and helicene-like molecules have been reported in the limited examples as summarized below. Espeically for multiple fused helical structures, one of the challenges in synthesis is to overcome the steric repulsion at terminal part. Compound 1a is taken as example to show steric clash at peripheral rings (Figure 1-4), as well as contributing to the formation of helical shape and unique properties such as high racemization barriers, which will be discussed in detail in Chapter 4.


Figure 1-4. One example of steric clash in helical structure

To achieve the cyclization to sterically hindered helical structures in these amidefunctionalized molecules, a photo-induced cyclization has been adapted, which is originally applied in carbohelicene synthesis. ${ }^{1 \mathrm{ln}, 1 \mathrm{lo}, 1 \mathrm{p}}$ In 2000, Branda prepared terminal amidefunctionalized [7]helicene, in minor amounts through irradiation of an isomeric mixture with iodine as an oxidizing agent and propylene oxide as an HI scavenger and the following removal of the benzyl groups (Scheme 1-1). ${ }^{7 \mathrm{~d}}$ However, this method is not readily applicable to gramscale syntheses because high-dilution conditions and special apparatuses for the photo-irradiation were needed and a undesirable isomer was obtained as the main product.


Scheme 1-1. Synthesis of terminal amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule by Branda

Reported by Suzuki and Murase, a continuous flow strategy was performed to furnish amidetype aza[6]helicene by virtue of the borate structure, in which the phenyl group located in close to the fused cyclic rings. The oxidative photocyclization and easy brokenness of nitrogen-oxygen bond gave the amide-functionalized helicene-like molecule (Scheme 1-2). ${ }^{10}$ Cumbersome experimental operations, harsh reaction conditions, and low yield make it difficult to obtain the desired product conveniently and efficiently.


Scheme 1-2. Synthesis of amide-type aza[6]helicene by Suzuki and Murase

Transition-metal catalyzed reactions represent another promising pathway for asymmetric synthesis of heterohelicenes and heterohelicene-like molecules, ${ }^{1 \mathrm{~s}, 4 \mathrm{c}, 11}$ which have been proved to be powerful enough to overcome the terminal steric repulsion, especially in highly fused systems.

A highly efficient method for the enantioselective synthesis of azahelicenes has been achieved through the Au-catalyzed sequential intramolecular hydroarylation of alkynes by Tanaka in 2014. The amide-type [6]helicene was afforded in $92 \%$ yield with $74 \%$ ee value by Au-catalyzed enantioselective sequential intramolecular hydroarylation from a diyne substrate with two naphthyl groups (Scheme 1-3). ${ }^{\text {1b }}$ Although this method is quite powful, further improvement of the enantioselectivity would be needed.



(M)
$74 \%$ ee

Scheme 1-3. Synthesis of ( $M$ )-amide-type [6]helicene by Tanaka

With the short review of synthesis of amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules, it has been realized that very limited methods have been developed to achieve the cyclization by overcoming terminal steric effect, especially in highly fused systems. Furthermore, photocyclization methods are hardly applied to the scaled-up preparation of heterohelicenes and heterohelicene-like molecules. Therefore, simple cyzliation conditions that do not use photocyclization are required.

### 1.3 Background and design of the synthetic strategies to amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules

Previously, a synthetic investigation of axially chiral biary $\delta$-amino acid 2 processing anilinetype amino and carboxy groups at $2,2^{\prime}$-position has been conducted in the author's group (Scheme 1-4). ${ }^{12}$ In the course of this research, it has been discovered that there exists a spontaneous cyclization of ( $S$ )-binaphthyl-type $\delta$-amino acid molecule, furnishing an ( $d l$ )-amidefunctionalized [5]helicene-like molecule. In this process, the amide group was incorporated into the fused heterocyclic system as a constituent moiety. ${ }^{12 a}$ Moreover, the properties of $N$-PMP substituted amide-functionalized [5]helicene-like molecule, for instance, its twisted aromatic system, were also revealed by X-Ray analysis. However, the racemization barrier is too low (24.6 $\mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ at $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) to permit it to exist in a configurationally stable form at ambient temperature.


Scheme 1-4. Discovery of spontaneous cyclization process

It's envisioned that if the racemization barrier energy was increased sufficiently, such amidefunctionalized molecules could become promising chiral functionalized heterohelicene-like molecules. To the best of my knowledge, there is no precedent for employing an lactamization for a cyclization reaction that yields a heterhelicene-like molecule except for our example. ${ }^{12 \mathrm{a}}$ Therefore, it was intended to prepare amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules, with the expectation that it would exhibit stable helical chirality.

Furthermore, a series of palladium-catalyzed domino reaction of ortho-halobenzamide to phenanthridinone derivatives have been conducted by Catellani (Scheme 1-5A), ${ }^{13}$ our group (Scheme 1-5B and C) ${ }^{12 a, 14}$ and Chen (Scheme 1-5D). ${ }^{15}$ Early in 2006, Catellani discovered that a catalytic multistep process sequence combining the palladium-catalyzed homocoupling of ortho-bromobenzothiophene amide in the presence of $\mathrm{Pd}(\mathrm{OAc})_{2} / \mathrm{TFP}$ as the catalyst leads to N PMB sulfur-containing fused cyclic compound, that can be recognized as an amide-functionalized [5]helicene-type molecule, under mild conditions (Scheme 1-5A). Our group also developed thistype of coupling in the presence of biaryl phosphine ligand (Scheme 1-5B). ${ }^{14}$ Further investigation in our group found the phosphine-ligand-free conditions (cat. $\mathrm{Pd}_{2}(\mathrm{dba})_{3}, \mathrm{~K}_{2} \mathrm{CO}_{3}$ in

DMF), which led to amide-functionalized [5]helicene-like molecule in excellent yield in a single step (Scheme 1-5C). ${ }^{12 \mathrm{a}}$

C)

D)




Scheme 1-5. Palladium-catalyzed domino reactions to phenanthridione derivatives

The domino reaction of ortho-chlorobenzamides was further investigated by Chen (Scheme 15D). ${ }^{15}$ After optimization of conditions, the catalytic system was established to be $\mathrm{PdCl}_{2}(\mathrm{PhCN})_{2}$ as catalyst, CsF as base, water as additive at $140{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ in DMA. A broad substrate scope of N substituted 2-chlorobenzamides as well as a scaled-up experiment were exemplified in this protocol.

However, to my best knowledge, there is no report for this domino approach applied with the highly fused cyclic system such as naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene $\mathbf{3}$ towards amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules which are also regarded as optically active helical molecules (Scheme 1-6). Thus, an strategy for the synthesis of sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicenelike molecule $\mathbf{1 a}$ and $\mathbf{1 b}$ via palladium-catalyzed domino reaction would be worthy to examine.

Taking these backgrounds into account, basically two strategies were proposed to achieve the synthesis, including lactamization and palladium catalyzed domino reaction (Scheme 1-6).


Scheme 1-6. Synthetic strategies towards amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules

In Chapter 2, the author designed the lactamization as a key to amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules. After being prepared the monomethyl ester of biphenanthryl dicarboxylic acid 4, helicene-like molecule 1a was obtained under Curtius reaction conditions with DPPA and subsequent addition of $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ via the lactamization of the intermediary aniline-type $\delta$-amino acid derivative 5 . This cyclization was readily expanded to the preparation of optically active $(M)$ - and $(P)$-helicene-like molecules $\mathbf{1 a}$ from $(R)$ - and $(S)$-biphenanthryl monomethyl ester 4, respectively (Scheme 1-7).


Scheme 1-7. Lactamization strategy

In Chapter 3, a novel and efficient direct one-pot cyclization protocol has been developed to furnish phenanthridinones and amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules $\mathbf{1}$ (Scheme 1-8). The author envisioned that direct cyclization from the dicarboxylic acid 6 to helicene-like molecules as well as phenanthridinone derivatives would be possible, if the in-situ generated amino group undergoes cyclization with the alternative carboxy group under Curtius reaction conditions. By the survey of the reaction conditions, use of 2 equivalents of DPPA gave the desired product. This reaction conditions can be applicable to the preparation of optically active $(M)$ - and $(P)$-amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules including sulfur containing derivatives from the corresponding $(R)$ - and $(S)$-biaryl dicarboxylic acids 6. During the survey of the conditions, the author noticed the phosphate ester derivatives 7 were generated under Curtius
conditions in the case of the substrates including chalcogen atoms and subsequent treatment of the basic conditions gave the corresponding helicene-like molecules.

Furthermore, these conditions were applicable to the biaryl dicarboxylic acid derivatives to furnish phenanthridinone derivatives bearing a variety of substituents.


Scheme 1-8. Direct one-pot cyclization strategy

A palladium-catalyzed domino reaction through $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{C}$ and $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{N}$ bond formation involving ipso substitution is described in Chapter 4 to obtain a sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b efficiently. In the strategies described in Chapter 2 and Chapter 3, the key intramolecular amide bond formations were proceeded from the biaryl substrates prepared in prior to the cyclization. Further straightforward way to access amide-functionalized helicenelike molecules would be the domino process through the biaryl formation and the lactamization. The author envisioned that the Pd catalyzed domino process previously developed in our laboratory can be applicable to this strategy. After the survey of the reaction conditions, $\mathbf{8}$ was obtained from the bromo naphthothiophene amide 3 through subsequent $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{C}$ and $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{N}$ bond formations (shown in the green bonds). The PMB-protecting group was readily deprotected to give 1b (Scheme 1-9).


Scheme 1-9. Palladium-catalyzed domino reaction strategy

Details on the three strategies will be described in the following chapters.

## Chapter 2 <br> Synthesis of an amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule via lactamization of biphenanthryl monomethyl ester and its structural analysis

In this Chapter, it was intended to prepare amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1a, through an lactamization of the intermediary axialy chiral $\delta$-amino acids formed by the Curtius rearrangement of biphenanthryl monomethyl ester 4 (Scheme 2-1). Furthermore, the author reports the crystal structure of $\mathbf{1 a}$.


Scheme 2-1. Synthetic strategies of 1a via lactamization

### 2.1 Preparation of monomethyl ester for the lactamization

We explored a synthetic pathway to monomethyl ester 4 of biphenanthryl dicarboxylic acid. Firstly, it was intended to prepare 3-methoxyphenanthrene 9. A versatile method ${ }^{16}$ has been developed by Kwong in 2017, which is a three-component cross-coupling of aryl halides, 2haloarylcarboxylic acids, and nobornadiene. According to this method, compound 9 was directly obtained with the yield of $64 \%$ in large scale under almost the same conditions in Kwong's paper except for changing reaction temperature $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to reflux in dioxane (Scheme 2-2).


Scheme 2-2. Synthesis of 3-methoxyphenanthrene 9

With large amount of $\mathbf{9}$ in hand, racemic ditriflate $(d l) \mathbf{- 1 2}$ of biphenanthrenediol can be furnished smoothly through the demethylation by $\mathrm{BBr}_{3}$, oxidative coupling in the presence of
$\mathrm{CuCl}_{2}$ and phenylethylamine, and the triflation with $\mathrm{Tf}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ in pyridine according to the reported method as shown in Scheme 2-3. ${ }^{17}$


Scheme 2-3. Synthesis of ( $d l$ )-ditriflate 12

The optical resolution of ( $d l$ )-diol $\mathbf{1 1}$ was conducted according to the literature procedure by the use of (1S)-10-camphorsulfonyl chloride as chiral resolution reagent (Scheme 2-4). ${ }^{18}$ The diastereomers of $\mathbf{1 3}$ was readily separated by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}\right.$, toluene : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=$ $10: 1)$. Then hydrolysis of the camphor ester gave $(S)-\mathbf{1 1}$ and $(R)-\mathbf{1 1}$ respectively in enantiopure form. The absolute configuration of compounds $\mathbf{1 1}$ has been determined by comparing with the reported ${ }^{1} \mathrm{H}$ NMR data of corresponding compound $\mathbf{1 3} .{ }^{18}$


Scheme 2-4. Optical resolution of $(d l)$-11

Related to synthesis of the dicarboxylic acid from the ditriflate, Manabe reported a practical synthetic method, ${ }^{19}$ palladium-catalyzed external CO-free carbonylation reaction with phenyl formate as a CO surrogate. Claiming the prepared biphenanthryl ditriflate substrate 12, diphenyl ester 14a was synthesized. Then, desired dicarboxylic acid ( $d l$ )-6a was obtained by hydrolysis (Scheme 2-5).


Scheme 2-5. Optimization for synthesis of dicarboxylic acid 6a

With dicarboxylic acid ( $d l$ )-6a in hand, selective monomethylation was easily achieved with controlled equivalence of MeI ( 3.0 equiv.) and $\mathrm{Ag}_{2} \mathrm{CO}_{3}$ ( 0.5 equiv.) developed by our group in
$54 \%$ yield (Scheme 2-6), ${ }^{12 \mathrm{~b}}$ The same procedure afforded $(R)-4$ and $(S)-4$ in $40 \%$ and $43 \%$ yields, respectively.


Scheme 2-6. Selective monomethylation of biphenanthryl dicarboxylic acids $(d l)-,(R)-$, and $(S)-\mathbf{6 a}$

### 2.2 Transformation to amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules via lactamization

With monomethyl ester 4 in hand, the cyclization reaction via lactamization of in-situ generated $\delta$-amino acids 5 prepared from the Curtius rearrangement was conducted (Scheme 2-7). Treatment of 4 with DPPA ( 1.5 equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}$ (3.0 equiv.) in toluene at $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ completed the Curtius rearrangement. Subsequently, $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ was added to hydrolyze the isocyanate intermediate to furnish the intermediate 5. And finally the target amide-functionalized helicene-like molecule 1a was obtained after further hearting and stirring for 42 hours in $51 \%$ yield.

In order to confirm intermediate 5 , the reaction of $(d l)-4$ was stopped in 1.5 hours after adding $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$. Compound 5 was successfully isolated in $64 \%$ yield. This proved that the cyclization to $\mathbf{1 a}$ proceeded through lactamization of 5 .


Scheme 2-7. Synthesis of $(d l)$-1a via lactamization and isolation of $(d l)-5$

Under the same Curtius rearrangement and lactamization procedure, the optically pure $(M)$ and $(P)$-amide-functionalized [7]helicene 1a were obtained respectively (Scheme 2-8). It has been proved that there's no racemization taking place during the lactamization procedure based on the high ee value ( $>99 \%$ ee for $(M) \mathbf{- 1 a} ;>98 \%$ ee for $(P)$-1a) of each isomer of resulted 1a. The specific rotation of $(M)$-1a was also measured to show large value as described in Chapter $4\left([\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{20}=-1336, \mathrm{c}=0.01, \mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right)$.

(R)-4

(S)-4



Scheme 2-8. Synthesis of optically pure 1a via lactamization

### 2.3 The $X$-Ray analysis of racemic mixture of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule

An X-Ray diffraction analysis of racemic helicene-like molecule $\mathbf{1 a}$ has been conducted. Although significant disorder over two different geometries of the molecules was observed as shown in Figure 2-1(A), the helicene-like structure of 1a was clearly confirmed. To make the discussion simple, one of the disordered structure was extracted and depicted in Figure 2-1(B).

(B)


Figure 2-1. The crystal structure of $(d l)$-1a. (A) The disordered structure of associated pair of $(P)$ - and $(M)$-1a through hydrogen bonding. (B) One of the disordered structure.

In Figure 2-1(B), it is clearly confirmed that 1a revealed a typical helicene structure with a twisted $\pi$-system ( $\phi \mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}-\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d}: 23(1)^{\circ}$ for the $(P)$-enantiomer and $\phi \mathrm{a}^{\prime}, \mathrm{b}^{\prime}-\mathrm{c}^{\prime}, \mathrm{d}^{\prime}:-28(1)^{\circ}$ for the $(M)$ enantiomer) and an amide group as a constituent moiety of the molecular framework. It is worth noting that the amide group functions as a molecular recognition moiety that manifests in pairwise association between the $(P)$ - and $(M)$-enantiomers via hydrogen-bonding interactions $\left(\mathrm{O} \cdots \mathrm{N}^{\prime}=\right.$ $\left.2.86(2) \AA ; \mathrm{O}^{\prime} \cdots \mathrm{N}=2.68(2) \AA\right)$.

This paired complex furthermore forms alternatingly aligned $M, P, M, P$ columnar packs (Figure 2-2A, B), in which each column is created by the $\pi-\pi$ stacking of a homochiral enantiomer (Figure 2-2C). Generally, $\pi-\pi$ stacking interaction plays an important role in the self-assembly behavior of helicenes. In our case, it is typically supported by short contacts between the $\pi$-faces
of a homochiral enantiomer such as ( $P$ )-1 (e.g., 3.19(2) $\AA$ and $3.49(1) \AA$ ) (Figure 2-2C), acting as one of the foundational driving forces toward aggregations.

Thus, along $a$ axis, in a lengthwise way of the packing form, the single enantiomer aggregates vertically based on regular $\pi-\pi$ stacking interactions to give the columnar packing constructed by homo chiral molecules. Rarely, along $b$ axis, in a crosswise way, each homochiral column is connected horizontally by hydrogen bonding interactions between the amide groups in pairwise enantiomers, leading to an uncommon aggregation style. Hydrogen bonding functionalized packing structure with a particular width makes the racemic mixture of amide-functionalized helicene-like molecule 1a to form a wider and larger molecular network which is different from usual single columnar aggregations of most helicenes.


Figure 2-2. The packing diagram of ( $d l$ )-1a

The formation of homochiral or heterochiral dimers of helicene compounds have been studied by Yamaguchi and Würthner. ${ }^{20}$ The [4]helicene (Figure 2-3) dimers might be in an alternatingorientation arrangement (anti) or a same-orientation arrangement (syn), especially that the synhomochiral dimer is the most stable form (Figure 2-3). With regard to chiral recognition phenomenon in noncovalent bonding interactions ( $\pi-\pi$ stacking interaction in helicene case), the summary was also provided by Prof. Yamaguchi's study: The interactions between helical molecules show a tendency for pairs of the same configuration of the helicenes to form more stable complexes than pairs of enantiomeric helicenes. There was also a finding that in $\pi-\pi$
stacking dimerization of perylene bisimides (PBIs) with $\pi$-core, chiral self-recognition ( $P P$ and $M M$ homodimer formation) prevails over self-discrimination ( $P M$ heterodimer formation).


Figure 2-3. Syn- and anti-dimer aggregation of helicenes with flexible $\pi$-core

However, the model used by Prof. Yamaguchi is basically [4]helicenes without large steric repulsion at terminal rings. In the case of $\mathbf{1 a}$ which is much sterically hindered at terminal part, the situation of $\pi-\pi$ stacking interactions and aggregation behavior is totally different as discussed below.


Figure 2-4. $\pi$-Overlapping analysis of $s y n$ - and anti-dimers of 1a ( $(P)$-1a red; ( $M$ )-1a blue)

## Syn-dimer form:

With a sterically hindered terminal part, the $\pi$ overlapping area of syn-homochiral dimer of 1a is less tight. Since the directions of radians are opposite between the close two $\pi$-faces, the overlapping is worst in syn-homochiral dimer (Figure 2-4A). In syn-heterochiral dimer form, the overlapping of the close two $\pi$-surfaces is strong (Figure 2-4B). However, in this form, only ordinary columnar packing along $a$ axis (lengthwise way) is formed by the paired complexed
dimers with associated $(P)$ - and $(M)$-enantiomers by hydrogen bonds at amide groups. Since syndimers are formed, amide groups will be located tightly in the center of each packing column, failing to align molecules in $b$ axis (crosswise way). Therefore, it's difficult for syn-heterochiral dimers to form aggregation net. In my opinion, the separated columnar packing form should be less stable than the staggered combined net construction as shown in Figure 2-2 (formed by antihomochiral dimers) because of weaker $\pi-\pi$ stacking interactions in separated column form. Further powerful evidences or special-purpose calculation are needed to prove the idea.

## Anti-dimer form:

In anti-heterochiral dimer form, between the close two twisted $\pi$ surfaces, the directions of radians are also opposite. Thus, a relatively weak $\pi$ overlapping extent is formed. The stability of anti-heterochiral dimer is still relatively low (Figure 2-4C). Finally, in anti-homochiral dimer, the two directions of radians in close $\pi$-faces are the same, leading to a large $\pi$ overlapping area. At the same time, because of anti-dimer formation, they can further be connected by hydrogen bonds along $b$ axis (crosswise way) to form an aggregation net (Figure 2-2). Thus, the highest stability is formed (Figure 2-4D).

In conclusion, anti-homochiral dimer arrangement is the best aggregation way.
The similar molecular assembly through hydrogen-bonding interaction has also been reported by Branda with amide-functionalized helicene bearing amide groups at the ends of the twisted backbone (Figure 2-5A). ${ }^{7 \mathrm{~d}}$ Figure 2-5C shows the packing diagrams. In these molecular assembly, there's a diastereoselective recognition process and only homochiral dimers where the acetyl groups exist exclusively in a cis-relationship appear in the crystal. Homochiral dimers arrange into offset racemic columns with face to face $\pi$-stacking interactions.




Figure 2-5. (A) Structure of acetyl group and amide-functionalized [7]helicene; (B) Side and up views of the X-Ray diagram of one of the enantiomerically pure hydrogen-bonded dimers ( $\mathrm{N} \cdots \mathrm{O}$ distance of 2.740 and $2.829 \AA$ ); (C) Packing diagram ( an average distance of $3.64 \AA$ ) (see ref. 7d)

Our X-Ray results and this reported observation indicated that molecular assembling property was considered as a typical feature of amide-functionalized helicenes and helicene-like molecules.

Furthermore, the columnar assemblies of helicene have been recognized to be the source of unusual optical properties in helicene-type materials as well as to be a key for potential applications in material chemistry. Especially, one-dimensional stacked chiral columnar aggregations of helicens are particularly attractive due to their unique chiroptical properties in the crystalline state. ${ }^{4 \mathrm{a}, 4 \mathrm{~b}, 4 \mathrm{f}}$

The helicenebisquinone derivative (Figure 2-6A) ${ }^{4 b}$ were reported to form one-dimensional columnar aggregates with the aid of long alkyl side chains. The donor-acceptor interactions between the electron-rich inner rings of one molecule and the electron-poor outer rings of another might stabilize a columnar stack. This aggregate might contribute to the application of electrooptical functional material for helicenebisquinone molecules.

The use of dipole-dipole interactions with inherent $\pi-\pi$ stacking interactions in helicenes can also produce a one-dimensional columnar arrangement. One of the examples is the columnar aggregation of $\lambda^{5}$-Phospha [7]helicene with one-way chirality (Figure 2-6B). ${ }^{7 \mathrm{c}}$ The dipole moment vectors that are perpendicular to the helical axis compensate with each other by the two interacting molecules, while in the orientation of being parallel to the helical axis, the vectors are aligned in one column. The most notable is that each column has a single enantiomer of either $(P)$ or $(M)$ in the packing of racemate. Other example was found in coumarin-fused [6]helicene (Figure 2-6C). ${ }^{7 \mathrm{a}}$ The packing structure of enantiopure ( $M$ )-coumarin-fused helicene in the single crystals exhibits a one-dimensionally stacked columnar alignment resulted from antiparallel face-to-tail $\pi-\pi$ stacking interactions (Figure 2-6C). In the helical axis, the dipole moment vectors compensate for each and the vectors which are parallel to the helical axis are aligned into one column.

The one-dimensionally stacked columnar organization was also found in carbo[5]helicene containing bromide substituted benzylmaleimide group (Figure 2-6D). ${ }^{7 \mathrm{~b}}$ The peripheral benzyl groups result in weak steric interactions that are responsible for the formation of columnar stacked arrangements by keeping less steric clash at terminal rings as well as the interaction between bromine and oxygen. The formation of $(P)$ - and $(M)$-racemic dimers in its unit cell from the pair of bromine and oxygen leads to an alternating array of $(P)$ - and $(M)$-columns.

In the author's amide-functionalized helicene-like molecule, the columnar packing was found to be caused from the interactions not only through the $\pi-\pi$ interaction between the $\pi$-faces, which is well known for helicene molecular assembly, but also through the hydrogen-bonding interactions via the amide groups (Figure 2-6E). This indicated that the amide functional group modified at the outer sphere of the helicene and/or helicene-like molecules would also be a promising way to have these special packing modes. Foreseeable, our columnar, as well as row packing of racemic 1a would thus represent an attractive starting point for potential applications in chiral organic materials.


Figure 2-6. (A) Chemical structure of helicenebiquinone and schematic representation of columns of stacked helicene molecules as observed in solid bulk samples. (The side chains have been deleted for clarity, and the first helicenes are arbitrarily shown to be in the same rotational phase) (See ref. 4b) (B) Structure of $\lambda^{5}$-phospha[7]helicene and columnar arrangement of $(P)$ and $(M)$ in the single-crystal structure of racemate. (The closest intermolecular contact between homochiral dimers is $3.35 \AA$.) (See ref.7c) (C) Structure of coumarin-fused helicene and onedimensionally stacked packing structure of $(M)$-coumarin-fused helicene. (The closest intermolecular contact between homochiral dimers is $3.44 \AA$ ) (See ref. 7a) (D) Chemical structure of $p$-bromobenzylmaleimide functionalized carbo[5]helicene and the packing diagram. (The $p$ bromobenzylmaleimide groups and hydrogen atoms are omitted for clarity) (See ref.7b) (E) Packing diagram of $\mathbf{1 a}$

Furthermore, the discussion on the amide functionalized groups at the terminal rings exist as pyridin-2 $(1 H)$-one moiety or 2-hydroxypyridine would be important. However, the crystal structure of racemic 1a is disordered over two positions actually, shown in Figure 2-1(A). Two possible directions, located in the associated structure for each $(P)$ or $(M)$ enantiomer result in the mixed outcome which might bring some deviation into the crystal data. For example, the bond lengths of $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}$ bonds were obtained from the X-Ray analysis as following: $\mathrm{C} 1-\mathrm{O} 1(124 \mathrm{pm})$, C60-O4 (124 pm), C59-O3 (129 pm), C30-O2 (127 pm) (Figure 2-1A). Based on general experience, it should be predicted that the $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}$ bond in $\mathbf{1 a}$ is double bond. ${ }^{21}$ However, the data might not be reliable or accurate because of its severe disordered structure. Besides, In the case of 2-pyridone, oxo- form $\mathbf{B}$ mainly exists in both weakly polar solvent (e.g. $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ ) or polar solvent (e.g. DMSO) (Figure 2-7). ${ }^{21}$ However, the substituents show large effects on the equilibrium. There's no study for the amide-[7]helicene so far. For the time being, detailed discussion on such tautomeric structures is quite difficult. Further study is needed to make sure the structural details. 2-pyridone form is used in DFT calculation of racemization barrier (Chapter 4).


Figure 2-7. Tautomerization of 2-pyridone and 2-hydroxypyridine

In summary, since such special and interesting properties of 1a shown by an X-Ray analysis have been discovered for the first time, our attentions were drawn even more to its unique molecular behaviors and added promising chiroptical properties of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules are expected to be checked. Thus, a demand of more efficient, easier and broader synthetic method towards various amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules remains.

## Chapter 3 <br> One-pot access to amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules and phenanthridinone derivatives from biaryl dicarboxylic acids

In chapter 2, the lactamization of axially chiral biphenanthryl $\delta$-amino acid derivative 5 was prepared from the corresponding monomethyl ester 4 (Scheme 3-1A). In this strategy, for discrimination of the carboxy groups modified on the biphenanthrene framework, monoesterification of the dicaboxylic acid should be carried out prior to the key lactamization.

For further streamlining the synthesis of amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules, the author envisioned that direct cyclization from the dicarboxylic acid to helicene-like molecules would be possible without esterification, if the intermediary $\delta$-amino acid can be yielded in-situ and its amino group undergoes cyclization with the alternative carboxy group under Curtius reaction conditions (Scheme 3-1B). Thus, the author examined this hypothesis starting from simple and readily available substrate.

(B)


Scheme 3-1. Discovery of direct one-pot cyclization

### 3.1 Optimization of reaction conditions and extension to phenanthridinone synthesis

Initially, we examined the one-pot cyclization of diphenic acid $\mathbf{6 d}$ to phenanthridinone $\mathbf{1 d}$ (Table 3-1). As the author expected, the cyclization through lactamization proceeded to give 1d. Under Curtius rearrangement conditions using DPPA (1.0 equiv.) and DIPEA (2.0 equiv.) in toluene and successive treatment of 2 N aq. NaOH in one-pot, phenanthridinone $\mathbf{1 d}$ was obtained with $17 \%$ yield (Table 3-1, Entry 1). The amount of DPPA was found to be important for this cyclization. When the amount of DPPA increased to 2.0 equivalent, the yield dramatically increased to 72\% yield (Entry 2).

Table 3-1. Reaction conditions screening of one-pot cyclization


| Entry | DPPA (eq.) | Base (eq.) | Time | Temp. | Solvent | Yield $^{\text {a }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1.0 | DIPEA (2.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $17 \%$ |
| 2 | 2.0 | DIPEA (2.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $72 \%$ |
| 3 | 3.0 | DIPEA (2.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $38 \%$ |
| 4 | 4.0 | DIPEA (2.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $26 \%$ |
| 5 | 2.0 | DIPEA (4.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $73 \%$ |
| 6 | 2.0 | DIPEA (6.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $80 \%$ |
| 7 | 2.0 | Dibutylpyridine (6.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | ND |
| 8 | 2.0 | Et $\mathrm{N}(6.0)$ | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $33 \%$ |
| 9 | 2.0 | TMP (6.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $47 \%$ |
| 10 | 2.0 | DBU (6.0) | 12 h | reflux | toluene | $52 \%$ |
| 11 | 2.0 | DIPEA (6.0) | 12 h | reflux | THF | $30 \%$ |
| 12 | 2.0 | DIPEA (6.0) | 12 h | reflux | PhCl | $69 \%$ |

a) isolated yields.


Dibutylpyridine (2,6-Di-tert-butylpyridine)


TMP
(2,2,6,6-Tetramethylpiperidine)

On the other hand, increasing the amount of DPPA to 3.0 or 4.0 equivalents, the yields were decreased to $38 \%$ and $26 \%$ yields, respectively (Entries 3 and 4). After surveying reaction conditions further on bases (Entries 5-10) and solvent (Entries 11 and 12), the best condition was determined to be the combination of DPPA (2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA (6.0 equiv.) in toluene
under refluxing conditions. This best condition gave 1d in $80 \%$ yield (Entry 6). This proper equivalent of DPPA ( 2.0 equiv.) offer evidence for the mechanistic study of this cyclization, which will be discussed in Section 3.3.

Besides, this reaction was also successfully performed in gram-scale. With the optimized conditions (Table 3-1, entry 6), product $\mathbf{1 d}(1.3 \mathrm{~g}, 6.6 \mathrm{mmol})$ was obtained from $\mathbf{6 d}(2.0 \mathrm{~g}, 8.3$ mmol ) in $80 \%$ yield (Scheme 3-2).


Scheme 3-2. Scaled-up experiment of one-pot cyclization

The importance of phenanthridinones as bioactive compounds has been widely realized. Phenanthridinone core and its derivatives, as one of the important structural units for the development of therapeutic agents, have shown a variety of biological activities, such as antitumor activity, inhibitors for human poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase-3, selective estrogen receptor modulators (Figure 3-1). ${ }^{22}$

anti-tumor activity


ADP-ribose polymerase-3 inhibitor

selective estrogen
receptor modulators (SERMs)

Figure 3-1. Selected examples of phenanthridinone derivatives as natural products or key skeleton of bioactivity

With the importance of phenanthridinone derivatives in mind, the author extended the reaction to a variety of substrates to furnish corresponding phenanthridinone derivatives. After preparing a series of biaryl dicarboxylic acids through Ullmann coupling reaction of ortho-bromo or chloro aryl methylester and the following hydrolysis (see the experimental part), construction of a variety of phenanthridinone derivatives including heteroaromatic rings have been examined by this one-pot cyclization method (Table 3-2).

It was proved that the one-pot cyclization was applicable to a variety of biaryl dicarboxylic acid derivatives, although the substrates bearing methyl groups at 5,5 , positions only gave relarively low yield (41\%). Fluorine substituted substrates $\mathbf{1 f}$ and $\mathbf{1 i}$ gave $76 \%$ and $73 \%$ yields, respectively. Nitro- and methoxyl groups were found to be applicatble in this reaction. The heteroaromatic rings containing $\mathrm{O}, \mathrm{S}$, and Se were also accepted and furnished the corresponding products $\mathbf{1 m}, \mathbf{1 n}$, and 10 in good yields. One case did not give the expected product was the reaction with $\mathbf{6 1}$. This reaction gave unexpected cyclic urea $\mathbf{1 5}$ instead of expected $\mathbf{1 1}$. This could be due to the steric repulsion between the methyl groups at the bay region of expected 11 as discussed below.

Table 3-2. Synthesis of phenanthridinone derivatives via one-pot cyclization



1 e
$69 \%$
69\%

$1 f$
$76 \%$


1h
66\%

$1 i$

$75 \%$


1k
49\%

bay region


1 m
$1 m$
$67 \%$

$1 n$
$52 \%$


10
59\%


1p $55 \%$

Although the result of the cyclization to $\mathbf{1 1}$ suggested this reaction relatively sensitive to the steric congestion, the author moved to preparation of amide-functionalized helicene derivatives with the best conditions for one-pot access to phenanthridinone derivatives.

### 3.2 Synthesis of racemic and enantiopure amide-functionalized [7]helicenelike molecules via direct one-pot cyclization

Recently, an emerging trend in the helicene chemistry is the fusion of thiophenes into the helical skeleton, giving birth to various thiahelicenes (Figure 3-2). ${ }^{\text {a }}$ The presence of sulfur along the outer ridge of the helicene offers new opportunities to modify the electronic and optical properties. ${ }^{\text {1a, } 1 \mathrm{f}}$ Another exciting property of thiaheterohelicenes revealed to date is their interaction with biologically important macromolecules as discussed in Chapter 1.




Figure 3-2. Examples of thiahelicenes

Despite that the advances for thiahelicene synthesis have been well developed, the classic method of carbohelicene synthesis involving photocyclization of stilbene precursors has been developed for decades of years, remaining as the most popular method for preparing thiahelicenes of various sizes and functionalization (Scheme 3-3). ${ }^{1 \mathrm{a}}$ It is clear that a general and highly enantioselective route to thiahelicenes remains a synthetic challenge. Therefore, the author also applied the developed one-pot cyclization into sulfur containing [7]helicene-like molecule.


Scheme 3-3. Photocyclization of stilbenoid precursor as a route to thiahelicene

Firstly, both racemic and optically pure biphenanthryl dicarboxylic acids obtained in Chapter 2 were applied to the developed one-pot cyclization conditions. As the author expected, both corresponding racemic and optically active amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1a was afforded directly although the yields were not satisfactory (Scheme 3-4). The HPLC analysis of [7]helicene-like compound $(M)$ - and $(P)$-1a proved no racemization proceeded during the onepot cyclization.

(dl)-6a


(S)-6a
> 98\% ee


DPPA (2.0 eq.)


37\%



Scheme 3-4. Synthesis of racemic and enantiopure 1a via direct one-pot cyclization

Based on previous study, a new sulfur and amide-functionalized [7]helicene 1b was designed and synthesized with the newly developed Curtius-rearrangement type one-pot cyclization strategy.

Since the previous conditions did not fit the racemic binaphthothiophene dicarboxylic acid substrate $\mathbf{5 b}$ well, a preliminary optimization for the bases has been conducted (Table 3-3). With DIPEA as base, target helicene-like molecule $\mathbf{1 b}$ was obtained with a low yield (15\%) (Table 33, entry 1). A further screening of bases was performed and finally it was discovered that $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}$ as base improved the reaction situation, with the yield increased to $25 \%$ and a relatively clean system on TLC (Table 3-3, entry 3). Above all, the racemic sulfur and amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b was synthesized with DPPA (2.0 equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}$ ( 6.0 equiv.) via the one-pot cyclization method.

Table 3-3. Base screening of one-pot cyclization from $\mathbf{6 b}$

(dl)-6b

| Entry | Base | Yield $^{\text {a }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | ${ }^{i} \operatorname{Pr}_{2} \mathrm{EtN}$ | $15 \%$ |
| 2 | DBU | $24 \%$ |
| 3 | $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}$ | $25 \%$ |

a) isolated yields

With the optimized conditions, optically active $(M)$ - and $(P)$-sulfur containing amidefunctionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b has been successfully obtained from ( $R$ )- and $(S)$ enantiomers of binaphthothiophene dicarboxylic acid 6b as substrates, respectively (Scheme 35). Optical rotation for $(M)$ - $\mathbf{1 b}$ was measured: $[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{19}=-1869.4$ ( $\mathrm{c}=0.50$, DMSO). Racemization barrier energy of $\mathbf{1 b}$ was checked and determined by observation of decrease of ee value of $(P)$ 1b in chlorobenzene under refluxing: $\Delta G^{\ddagger}{ }_{\text {rac }}=34.3 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}\left(132{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ in PhCl$)$ as discussed in

## Chapter 4.



Scheme 3-5. Synthesis of optically pure 1b via direct one-pot cyclization

During this investigation, the author noticed that the formation of phosphate ester derivatives was observed prior to addition of aq. NaOH , especially in the case of the reaction with the substrates $6 \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{6 b}, 6 \mathrm{~m}, \mathbf{6 n}, 60$ and $\mathbf{6 p}$ including chalcogen atoms in their fused cyclic systems (Figure 3-3).

(dl)-7b

15\%

$7 n: X=S 39 \%$
70: $X=$ Se $47 \%$


7p 59\%

Figure 3-3. Structures of diphenylphosphoryl esters

For example, $\mathbf{7 b}$ was successfully isolated and analyzed, after applying $\mathbf{6 b}$ to the optimized one-pot cyclization condition for 4 hours. 7b was isolated and purified by column chromatography, resulted as green solid with the yield of $15 \%$. At the same time, $\mathbf{1 b}$ was furnished in $10 \%$ yield directly. Then, $\mathbf{7 b}$ was quantitatively converted to $\mathbf{1 b}$ with aqueous NaOH in the mixture solvent of MeOH and THF at room temperature. The total yield of $\mathbf{1 b}(25 \%)$ is consistent with the one-pot procedure (Table 3-3, entry $\mathbf{3}$ ). This proved $\mathbf{7 b}$ was the product in the first Curtius reaction step prior to the treatment of aqueous NaOH .


Scheme 3-6. Isolation of 7b and its conversion to 1b
${ }^{1}$ H NMR and mass spectral analysis of $\mathbf{7 b}$ indicated that the structure should be phosphoryl ester or phosphoryl amide 7b’. However, it was difficult to obtain its single crystal for further structural analysis because of the instability. Thus, in the initial stage of the research, it kept
unclear whether the phosphoryl group was connected to oxygen in amide group or linked with nitrogen atom. The $O$-phosphoryl ester structure was deduced by the X-Ray analysis of sulfur containing $7 \mathbf{n}$ and selenium containing 7 o (Figure 3-4A, B).

From the X-Ray analysis of sulfur containing $7 \mathrm{n}, O$-phosphorus ester structure, in which diphenylphosphoryl group is connected to the oxygen atom instead of nitrogen atom in the amide group, was clearly determined. Furtherore, the helically twisted structure was observed ( $\phi \mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}-\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d}$ : $\left.-15.9(6)^{\circ}\right)$. Interestingly, the top view of the crystal structure indicated that the $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}$ bond of the phosphate and the $\pi$-faces of thiophene ring seem to be almost in the same plane without any remarkable twist (Figure 3-4, side view, the $\mathrm{N}-\mathrm{C}, \mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}$ and $\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{P}$ bonds aligned in the almost same plane: $\left.\phi \mathrm{N}, \mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}, \mathrm{P}:-7.3(4)^{\circ}\right)$. The coplanar arrangement seems to come from the conformational restriction around the $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}$ bond between the pyridine moiety and the diphenylphosphate group. This conformational lock might come from the pnictogen-bonding interaction between the nitrogen and the phosphorus atoms. The length between the nitrogen and the phosphorus atoms $(2.928(3) \AA)$ which is shorter than sum of the van der Waals radii of nitrogen and phosphorus atoms ( $3.35 \AA$ ) suggested the presence of the pnictogen-bonding interaction (Figure 3-4, side view). ${ }^{23}$ Furthermore, the length between the sulfur of thiophene moiety and the oxygen of phosphate group (3.003(2) $\AA$ ) which is shorter than sum of the van der Waals radii of sulfur and oxygen atoms $(3.32 \AA)$ indicated the presence of chalcogen-bonding interaction occurred between these atoms (Figure 3-4, side view). ${ }^{23}$

In the crystal structure of selenium containing 7o, its $\pi$-system was also found to be helically twisted with the dihedral angle ( $\phi \mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}-\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d}:-16.4(5)^{\circ}$ ), which is slightly bigger than that of $\mathbf{7 n}$. This compound also showed the coplanar geometry of the $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{P}$ bond of the phosphate and the $\pi$ face of selenophene ring, that also might derive from the pnictogen-bonding interaction between the nitrogen and the phosphorus atoms (Figure 3-4, side view, the $\mathrm{N}-\mathrm{C}, \mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}$ and $\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{P}$ bonds aligned in the almost same plane: $\left.\phi \mathrm{N}, \mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O}, \mathrm{P}: 5.5(3)^{\circ}\right)$. Furthermore, the chalcogen-bonding interaction also occurred between the selenium atom of selenophene moiety and the oxygen of phosphate group (3.101(2) $\AA$ ), which is shorter than sum of the van der Waals radii of selenium and oxygen atoms ( $3.42 \AA$ ). (Figure 3-4, side view). ${ }^{23}$ These additional non-covalent bonding interactions contribute to make these phosphorus esters to be isolable.
(A)


(B)



Figure 3-4. Crystal structures of $\mathbf{7 n}$ and 7 o

The packing diagrams of $\mathbf{7 n}$ and $\mathbf{7 o}$ are also shown in Figure 3-5. In both of the packing of $\mathbf{7 n}$ and $7 \mathbf{7}, M$ - and $P$-enantiomers were alternatively associated through $\pi-\pi$ stacking interations to form the columnar aggregations. In the case of $\mathbf{7 n}$, the $\pi-\pi$ stacking interations were observed between the helical backbone of the enantiomers $(3.361(4) \AA)$ and between the helical backbone of one enantiomer and the phenoxy group of the other enantiomer (3.184(5) Å). In the case of 70, the $\pi-\pi$ stacking interations were observed between the helical backbone and the phenoxy group of each enantiomeric pair (3.338(3) $\AA$ and $3.342(3) \AA$ ). Furthermore, CH-O interations were observed between the oxygen atom of the phenoxy group of $M$-enantiomer and the helical backbone of $P$-enantiomer ( $2.717 \AA$ ). The formation of heterochiral colums in case of $\mathbf{7 n}$ and $7 \mathbf{7}$ should be controlld by strong $\pi-\pi$ stacking interactions between phenoxy groups and helical backbone and $\mathrm{CH}-\mathrm{O}$ interactions.

It is worth noting that homochiral columnar packing was not formed in the both cases as observed in 1a. This might support the key role of the hydrogen-bonding interactions through the amide functional group of $\mathbf{1 a}$ and the rigid helical $\pi$-core for its columner aggregation composed of the homochiral molecules (Chapter 2.3, Figure 2-2).


Figure 3-5. (A) Packing diagrams of 7n; (B) Packing diagrams of 7 o

### 3.3 Mechanistic consideration of the direct cyclization from dicarboxylic acid

Based on the information on generating $O$-phosphorus esters bearing a partial structure of DPPA as the product in the first operation, and requirement of 2.0 equivalents of DPPA for reasonable yield, a reaction mechanism for the direct cyclization has been proposed (Figure 3-6). Firstly, the starting material reacts with 2.0 equivalent of DPPA and base to generate the mixed acid anhydride intermediate M-1. Subsequently, one of the acid anhydride groups transfers to isocyanate to give intermediate M-2. Then the isocyanate group might react with the phosphate ion generated in the reaction mixture to give the cyclic intermediate M-3. Then, the migration of the phosphate group might occur accompany with $\mathrm{CO}_{2}$ release to give diphenylphosphate 7 . Finally, the phenanthridinone derivative 1 will be obtained after hydrolysis by treatment of aq. 2 N NaOH in the second operation.



Figure 3-6. Proposed mechanism of one-pot cyclization

In the case of substrate $\mathbf{6 1}$, desired product $\mathbf{1 1}$ was not detected. Instead, cyclic urea $\mathbf{1 5}$ was formed in 32\% yield (Scheme 3-7).


Scheme 3-7. Cyclic urea formation from substrate 61

It was supposed that the steric repulsion between the methyl groups at $6,6^{\prime}$ - position led that the distance of two carboxy groups is too far to allow the nucleophilic attack of the nitrogen of isocyanate to the acid anhydride in M-2 (Figure 3-6) to undergo smoothly.

Therefore, the expected cyclization to $\mathbf{1 1}$ can not be proceeded. A plausible mechanism of formation of 15 was proposed (Figure 3-7). First of all, both carboxylic acid groups in 61 react with DPPA and DIPEA to form two isocyanate groups in M-4, then one of the isocyanates reacts with the phosphate ion generated in the system to form $\mathbf{M - 5}$. The other isocyanate reacts with phosphate ion and mixted acid anhydride by nucleophilic attack to generate the cyclic intermediate M-6. Finally, $\mathbf{1 5}$ will be furnished with releasing of phosphate group and $\mathrm{CO}_{2}$ in sodium hydroxide solution (Figure 3-7). For another possibility, after treating sodium hydroxide solution, M-4 may directly form cyclic intermediate by nucleophilic attack from hydroxide, then 15 was furnished through decarboxylation.


Figure 3-7. Proposed mechanism of formation of 15

Combined with lactamization (Chapter 2) and direct one-pot cyclization (Chapter 3) strategies, the author has made some progress in the synthesis of amide-functionalized helicenelike molecules without metal catalyst or photo-irradiation. However, recent years, palladiumcatalyzed coupling reaction has developed a lot and still remains as convenient and suitable methods to synthesize helicenes and helicene-like molecules. The author also developed an efficient palladium-catalyzed domino reaction towards sulfur and amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b with $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{N}$ and $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{C}$ formation together with the following deprotection of PMB group.

## Chapter 4 <br> Preparation of amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules by palladium-catalyzed domino reactions

Referring to a series of palladium-catalyzed domino reactions of ortho-halobenzamide to phenanthridinone derivatives described in Chapter 1 (Scheme 1-5), an strategy for the synthesis of sulfur and amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b was designed and proposed (Scheme 4-1).


Scheme 4-1. Strategy to synthesize 1b via palladium-catalyzed domino reaction

### 4.1 Preparation of the substrates for palladium-catalyzed domino reaction

In order to investigate the proposed domino strategy, it is necessary to prepare $\mathbf{3}$ in large quantity. The author developed a pathway to synthesize $\mathbf{3}$ from commercially available starting materials in a total yield of $32 \%$ over 8 steps as shown in Scheme 4-2.

According to the literature procedure, naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxylic acid $\mathbf{1 8}$ was easily obtained after 3 steps via $\mathbf{1 6}$ and $\mathbf{1 7}$ without column chromatography. ${ }^{24}$ After transformation to oxazoline derivative 20, the bromination through ortho-lithiation gave $\mathbf{2 1}$. Then, the hydrolysis under acidic conditions and the condensation with 4-methoxybenzylamine gave desired bromo naphthothiophene amide 3 (Scheme 4-2).




Scheme 4-2. Synthesis of substrate 3

To investigate other substrates without sulfur, substrate 29 was synthesized (Scheme 4-3). 25 was prepared by the reported procedure through 23 and $\mathbf{2 4}$ from 2-acethyl naphthalene in $11 \%$ yield through 5 steps. ${ }^{25}$ By Sandmeyer reaction, bromide 26 was obtained from 25. After several failed attempts of direct conversion from cyano to carboxylic acid, $\mathbf{2 8}$ was generated through conversion of the nitrile group to aldehyde 27 and subsequent oxidation. Finally, condensation between carboxylic acid and $p$-methoxybenzyl (PMB) amine gave PMB amide 29.




28

(1.2 eq.)


12 h
51\%


29

Scheme 4-3. Synthesis of substrate 29

### 4.2 Synthesis of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule via palladiumcatalyzed domino reaction

With substrate $\mathbf{3}$ in hand, several trials were conducted based on previous researches. ${ }^{13-15}$ At first, the additive-ligand free catalytic system using $\mathrm{Pd}_{2} \mathrm{dba}_{3}$ ( $6 \mathrm{~mol} \%$ ), $\mathrm{K}_{2} \mathrm{CO}_{3}$ (1.1 equiv.) in DMF developed by the author's group, was applied, however, the desired product was not detected at all after heating at $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 24 hours (Scheme 4-4).


Scheme 4-4. Additive-ligand free palladium-catalyzed domino reaction

Then, by applying Chen's ligand-free conditions with $\mathrm{PdCl}_{2}(\mathrm{PhCN})_{2}$ ( $5 \mathrm{~mol} \%$ ), CsF ( 4.0 equiv.) in DMA at $140{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, target helicene-like compound $\mathbf{8}$ was detected by mass spectral analysis. However, the yield was found to be low after purification (Table 4-1, Entry 1). Then further reaction conditions were screened on the amount of catalyst, reaction temperature and reaction time were examined and it was found that the reactivity of substrate $\mathbf{3}$ is relatively low and more reaction time was needed. Moreover, the reaction temperature was shown to influence the reaction efficiency. When a reaction temperature over $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ was applied, the yield decreased. When the conditions in entry 1 and 2 were applied, it was found that starting material would be remained partly. Therefore, $100{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ seemed to be a proper temperature for the reaction, and reaction time was increased twice. Finally, the product was obtained in $67 \%$ yield by carrying the reaction out at $100{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ in DMA for 48 hours with $\mathrm{PdCl}_{2}(\mathrm{PhCN})_{2}(10 \mathrm{~mol} \%)$, CsF (4.0 eq.) (Table 4-1, Entry 6).

Table 4-1. Preliminary conditions screening for palladium-catalyzed domino reaction


Furthermore, some trials were performed in order to improve the yield by adding phosphine ligands. But the results were not satisfactory (Table 4-2, entry 1-10). Enantioselective synthesis of $\mathbf{8}$ by using chiral phosphine ligands were also attempted by using $(R)$-BINAP and $(R)$-MOP as chiral phosphine ligands, but the enantioselectivity was not observed at all (Table 4-2, entry 1112).

Table 4-2. Attempts with phosphine ligands


| $\mathbf{3}$ |  | $\mathbf{8}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Entry | Ligand | Yield $^{\text {a }}$ |
| 1 | - | $67 \%$ |
| 5 | $\mathrm{P}(\mathrm{OMe})_{3}$ | $64 \%$ |
| 6 | $\mathrm{P}(n-\mathrm{Bu})_{3}$ | $61 \%$ |
| 7 | Tri $(o$-tolyl)phosphine | $61 \%$ |
| 8 | DPPP | $60 \%$ |
| 9 | $\mathrm{PCy}_{3}$ | $46 \%$ |
| 10 | Xantphos | $61 \%$ |
| 11 | $(R)$-BINAP | $66 \%(d l)$ |
| 12 | $(R)$-MOP | $69 \%(d l)$ |

a) NMR yield, 1,3,5-trimethoxybenzene as an internal standard.

$\mathrm{PCy}_{3}$ : Tricyclohexylphosphine

(R)-BINAP

(R)-MOP


Xantphos

In order to investigate the applicability of the domino reaction to the different substrates, several substrates 30-32 with same naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene nucleus were synthesized and tested (Figure 4-1). The substrates 31 bearing furylmethyl amide moiety was also found to be inapplicable to the conditions, although the reported domino reaction (Scheme 1-5D, Chapter 1) showed the corresponding ortho-bromo phenylamides gave the product in $92 \%$ yield. ${ }^{15}$ The naphthothiophene substrate 32 with $n$-butyl amide moiety generated $n$-butyl [7]helicene-like molecule 36 in 11\% yield (Scheme 4-5). Aryl chloride 30 did not give the helicene-like compound.

To investigate the possibility of diastereoselective synthesis of $\mathbf{8}$, the substrates $\mathbf{3 3}, \mathbf{3 4}, \mathbf{3 5}$ bearing chiral amine moieties were examined (Figure 4-1). However, corresponding helicenelike molecules were failed to be obtained clearly.


Figure 4-1. Expanded substrates for palladium-catalyzed domino reaction


Scheme 4-5. Palladium-catalyzed domino reaction with 32

Furthermore, palladium-catalyzed domino reaction of phenanthryl bromide 29 as the substrate without sulfur was examined. However, desired helicene-like product 37 could not be detected. Instead, the debrominated product 38 was yielded in 19\% yield (Scheme 4-6).


Scheme 4-6. Palladium-catalyzed domino reaction from 29

The palladium-catalyzed reaction was considered as one-pot domino $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{C}$ and $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{N}$ formation reaction involving an ipso substitution procedure. In 2011, Gandon and Porée conducted a detailed mechanistic study to characterize $\mathrm{Pd}(\mathrm{II})$ palladacycle and biaryl species as common intermediates for the domino processes. ${ }^{26}$ On that basis, $\mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{sp}^{2}\right)-\mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{sp}^{2}\right)$ bond formation is expected
and calculated by DFT to be generated from a Pd(IV) complex B after oxidation addition of the substrate into the $\operatorname{Pd}(\mathrm{II})$ palladacycle intermediate A. Based on these considerations, a plausible mechanism has been proposed (Figure 4-2).

After successive oxidative addition of $\operatorname{Pd}(0)$ to the substrate 2, a $\operatorname{Pd}(I I)$ intermediate $\mathbf{A}$ and $\operatorname{Pd}(I V)$ intermediate $\mathbf{B}$ will be furnished continuously. Intermediate $\mathbf{B}$ will lead to the $\mathbf{C}-\mathbf{C}$ coupling accompanying reductive elimination of $\mathrm{Pd}(\mathrm{IV})$ to $\mathrm{Pd}(\mathrm{II})$. The resulted intermediate $\mathbf{C}$ will undergo the key step of electrophilic aromatic substitution with deamidation reaction to give intermediate $\mathbf{D}$. And then after the leaving of isocyanate group, palladacycle $\mathbf{E}$ will be furnished. Finally the product $\mathbf{8}$ will be released by reductive elimination with $\operatorname{Pd}(0)$ entering to the catalytic cycle back.


Figure 4-2. Proposed mechanism for palladium-catalyzed domino reaction from 3

In both case of $\mathbf{3}$ and 29 as substrate, the first oxidative addition seemed to function well. However, during the second oxidative addition, in the intermediate B’ (Figure 4-3), the steric repulsion between PMB and the terminal ring in phenanthrene was stronger than the case of naphthothiophene intermediate $\mathbf{B}$.

Therefore, in the case of $\mathbf{2 9}$ as substrate, the formation of intermediated $\mathbf{B}$ ' should be quite difficult which might be the reason why phenanthrene 29 didn't furnish corresponding helicenelike product 37 .


Figure 4-3. Comparison of substrate $\mathbf{3}$ and $\mathbf{2 9}$ during domino procedure

Above all, the racemic PMB type helicene-like molecule $\mathbf{8}$ was obtained in $67 \%$ yield via palladium-catalyzed domino reaction with subsequent $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{C}$ and $\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{N}$ bond formations, although the diversity of substrates is quite limited and enatioselective and diastereoselective synthesis failed to be achieved. A proposed mechanism may offer some clues how the steric effects dominate the formation of a $\mathrm{Pd}(\mathrm{IV})$ intermediate, which could show an explanation for the substrate limitation. Further study for screening the conditions and substrates should be performed to expand the application scale and confirm the mechanism.

### 4.3 Deprotection of PMB group of the domino reaction product and oxidation of the sulfur atoms

The sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule $\mathbf{1 b}$ was furnished smoothly from 8 by refluxing in TFA for 48 h with deprotection of PMB group in $82 \%$ yield (Scheme 4-7).


Scheme 4-7. Deprotection of PMB group

With the introduction of sulfur atom to the out ridge of helicene backbone, it offers a possibility to change the electronic properties and potential chiropotical properties by further modification of the helicene structure on sulfur atoms. ${ }^{27}$ Therefore, further oxidation of sulfur atoms towards sulfonyl groups has been performed from both racemic and ( $M$ )-amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b (Scheme 4-8).

For the oxidation procedure, excess amount of trifluoroperacetic acid, which was generated in situ by mixing trifluoroacetic anhydride and $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{2}$, was used to oxidize the sulfur atoms in DCM at room temperature. Although the reaction took long time ( 7 days), both of the sulfur atoms of 1b were completely oxidized to the corresponding sulfonyl groups. The specific rotation of $(M)$ 39 was also recorded: $[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{19}=-983.6(\mathrm{c}=0.5, \mathrm{DMSO})$.

(dl)-1b

(M)-1b

$11 \%$ yield

$11 \%$ yield

(dl)-39

(M)-39

Scheme 4-8. Oxidation of the sulfur atoms of $\mathbf{1 b}$

The new oxidized helicene-like molecule 39 may exhibit interesting properties, eg., the acidity of amide group will be increased with the sulfonyl groups located nearby as electron withdrawing groups. And the sulfonyl groups might function as sterically hindered group, or a molecular recognition site as hydrogen-bonding acceptor site.

### 4.4 Racemization barriers and chiroptical properties

### 4.4.1 Racemization barriers of amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules

The racemization of helicenes is one of the intriguing properties. ${ }^{28}$ To evaluate the configurational stability of helical chirality of the optically active amide-functionalized helicenelike molecules, the author intended to check the racemization barrier energy for each molecule.

In the racemization process of helicenes, two transition states of pentahelicene have been proposed as shown in Figure 4-4. One is the $C_{2 v}$ transition state, in which all of the atoms of the helicene locate in the same plane. The other one is the $C_{\mathrm{s}}$ transition state, in which the terminal rings bending to the same side. In the most theoretical calculations, the transition state with $C_{\mathrm{s}}$ symmetry has been adopted. It means that the ground state firstly twists into the nonchiral $C_{\mathrm{s}^{-}}$ transition state and subsequently transforms to each configuration with equal possibility, resulting in racemization.



Figure 4-4. Two different transition states for racemization of pentahelicene

Firstly, it was intended to examine the racemization barrier energy of 1 a by experiment. However, the racemization barrier was proved to be too high to be measured practically. With continuous heating under reflux conditions in chlorobenzene (bp. $132^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ), no racemization was observed even after 3 days. Therefore, an estimation of the racemization barrier was undertaken using density functional theory (DFT) calculations at the wB97xd/6-311+G(d,p)//B3LYP/6$31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$ level of theory (see the experimental part) in chlorobenzene as solvent. The calculation was performed by the use of the dihedral angle (Figure 2-1, $\phi \mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}-\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d}: 23^{\circ}$ ) from the X -Ray analysis as the ground state structure. The results of the calculation showed the $C_{\mathrm{s}}$-symmetric transition-state structure with $41.4 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ of the racemization barrier as shown in Figure 4-5. This theoretical result confirmed that the configurational stability of $\mathbf{1 a}$ is enough to be optically active form without racemization under ambient temperature.

$\qquad$

TS



Ground state (0.0)


TS-structure (41.4)

Figure 4-5. Ground state and TS state of $\mathbf{1 a}$ (Relative Gibbs free energies ( $\mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ ) are given in parentheses; Dihedral angle ( $\phi \mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}-\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d}: 23^{\circ}$ ) was frozen using a crystal structure by X-Ray analysis)

On the other hand, the sulfur and amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule $\mathbf{1 b}$, the racemization barrier energy has been successfully measured by heating the $(P) \mathbf{- 1 b}$ in PhCl under refluxing conditions. By monitoring the ee value at continuous time points, the plot of $\ln \left(\mathrm{ee}_{0} / \mathrm{ee}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)$ to time was obtained as shown in Table 4-1.

Table 4-1. Racemization rate constant measurement (in chlorobenzene)

| Time $(\mathrm{min})$ | ee $(\%)$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 100 |
| 125 | 97.3 |
| 240 | 93.8 |
| 360 | 90.2 |
| 1020 | 72.2 |
| 1140 | 69.6 |
| 1810 | 55.9 |
| 2044 | 52.4 |



The first-order plot was shown as $\ln \left(\mathrm{ee}_{0} / \mathrm{ee}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)=0.0003 \mathrm{t}-0.0088\left(\mathrm{R}^{2}=0.9996\right)$. After calculation, the racemization rate constant was resulted as $k_{\mathrm{rac}}=2.716 \times 10^{-6}\left(\mathrm{~s}^{-1}\right)$. Then, the racemization barrier energy $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ rac was figured out as $34.3 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ by the following Eyring equation:

$$
\Delta G_{\mathrm{rac}}^{\ddagger}=-R T \ln \left(h k_{\mathrm{rac}} / \kappa T k_{\mathrm{B}}\right)
$$

Where, $k_{\text {rac }}=$ racemization rate constant, $\Delta G_{\text {rac }}^{\ddagger}=$ energy barrier for racemization, $T=$ temperature, $R=$ gas constant, $h=$ Planck constant, $k_{\mathrm{B}}=$ Boltzmann constant, and $\kappa=$ kappa, transmission coefficient (which is usually unity for this calculation).

On the other hand, DFT calculation of 1b was performed in chlorobenzene as solvent. The racemization barrier ( $\Delta G^{\ddagger}=36.3 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ ) was found to be similar value to the result determined by experiment. These consistent results indicate the reliability of the DFT calculation.


1b

$(P)-1 \mathbf{b}$
$36.3 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$



Ground state (0.0)


TS-structure (34.3)

Figure 4-6. Ground state and TS state of 1b. (The optimized structures of the ground state and the transition state were depicted by DFT calculation; Relative Gibbs free energies
( $\mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ ) are given in parentheses)

The racemization barrier energy of sulfur and amide-functionalized [5]helicene-like molecule 1n was turn out to be $3.1 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ by DFT calculation. The stability is much lower than sulfur and amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules $\left(\Delta G^{\ddagger}{ }^{\mathrm{rac}}=34.3 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}\right)$.



1n


$3.1 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$



Ground state (0.0)


TS-structure (3.1)

Figure 4-7. Ground state and TS state of 1n (The optimized structures of the ground state and the transition state were depicted by DFT calculation; Relative Gibbs free energies ( $\mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ ) are given in parentheses)

With the calculated and experimental racemization barrier energies in hand, a contradistinction and summary was conducted with other reported examples (Figure 4-8). ${ }^{29}$


1n
(3.1)

[4]helicene (4.0)

[5]helicene (24.1)


PMP-amide[5]helicenelike molecule (24.6)


Figure 4-8. Comparison of the racemization barriers among amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules and carbohelicenes. Racemization barriers ( $\mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ ) are shown in parentheses (see: ref. 29)

1) Generally, [6] and [7]helicenes are considered as configurationally stable, whereas helicenes with less than 5 aromatic rings might not keep their helical chirality very well at high temperature for a long time. It is because, as the length of helicene and helicene-like molecules ([4]helicenes to [7]helicenes) increase, the interplanar angles (Figure 1-2C) are larger, making it more difficult to reach the TS structure from the ground state.
2) It was found that the racemization barrier energies are similar for amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules without sulfur atoms than these normal carbohelicenes with same number of rings in backbone, indicating that pyridone ring inserted in the helicene outer core shows nearly no influence on the configurational stability of helical chirality. ( $24.6 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for PMP-amide [5]helicene-like molecule, $24.1 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for [5]helicene; $41.4 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for $\mathbf{1 a}, 41.7 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for [7]helicene)
3) Another point worth noting is the significantly reduced racemization barrier energies for helicene-like molecules by introducing thiophene rings into the helical backbone. One thiophene ring replacing one benzene ring at each side will greatly decrease the helical stability to even a lower level relating to the number of fused aromatic rings of carbohelicenes. ( $34.3 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for 1b, similar with $36.2 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for [6]helicene; $3.1 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for $\mathbf{1 n}$, similar with $4.0 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for [4]helicene)

For the reasons why sulfur containing amide functionalized helicene-like molecules show lower racemization barriers, two factors are suggested.

Firstly, with $\mathbf{1 a}$ and $\mathbf{1 b}$ taken as example, the introduction of thiophene ring as a five number ring instead of six-number benzene ring will cause an increase of the inside angle $\left(\theta^{1}=130.92^{\circ}, \theta^{2}\right.$ $=133.12^{\circ}, \theta^{3}=124.55^{\circ}, \theta^{4}=127.21^{\circ}$ in Figure 4-8) for at thiophene ring postion. With a larger inner angle $\left(\theta^{1}>\theta^{3} ; \theta^{2}>\theta^{4}\right)$ at corresponding position, the terminal ring will be further apart from each other and the overlapping area will be less as shown in Figure 4-9, thus the steric interactions between the two terminal rings will be smaller during racemization. This leads to a smaller racemization barrier energy of $\mathbf{1 b}$ than $\mathbf{1 a}(34.3 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for $\mathbf{1 b} ; 41.4 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ for $\mathbf{1 a})$.


Figure 4-9. Comparison of overlapping area in 1a, 1b, PMP-[5]helicene and 1n

Secondly, it is indicated that twisting distributed over a large number of aromatic bonds of the helicenes enables the racemization, ${ }^{28 \mathrm{~h}}$ therefore, the extent of aromacity of fused rings will also contribute to the racemization barrier energy. The sulfur containing amide functionalized helicene-like molecules show smaller racemization barriers as thiophene ring has a smaller aromacity compared with benzene ring.

With the combination of differences of $\pi$ overlapping area at terminal part and total helicene aromacity, sulfur containing amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules show lower racemization barrier energies.

### 4.4.2 Comparison with optical rotations of helicene and helicene-like molecules

With three new kinds of optically active [7]helicene-like molecules 1a, 1b, $\mathbf{3 9}$ in hand, the optical rotations of each molecule were measured in DMSO (Figure 4-10).

Obviously, all of them show relatively high optical rotation values. Even though the amidefunctionalized [7]helicene-like molecules seem to present a smaller optical rotation $\left([\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{18}=\right.$ $+1954.5, \mathrm{c}=0.2$ in DMSO) than carbo[7]helicene $\left([\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{25}=+5577, \mathrm{c}=1.0\right.$ in $\left.\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right),{ }^{29}$ their optical rotation values are still much higher than most usual chiral molecules.

(M)-1a
$[\alpha]_{D}{ }^{18}=+1954.5(c=0.2$, DMSO $)$

(M)-1b
$[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{19}=-1869.4(\mathrm{c}=0.5, \mathrm{DMSO})$

(M)-[7]helicene
$[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{25}=+5577\left(\mathrm{c}=1.0, \mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right)$

Figure 4-10. Comparison of optical rotations

### 4.4.3 CD spectra of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules

For investigating the chiroptical properties of $\mathbf{1 a}$ and $\mathbf{1 b}$, their circular dichroism (CD) spectrums were measured, as well as UV spectra in THF (Figure 4-11; 4-12).


Figure 4-11. CD and UV spectra of amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1a $\left(0.85 \times 10^{-5} \mathrm{M}\right.$ for $(P) \mathbf{- 1 a} ; 1.15 \times 10^{-5} \mathrm{M}$ for $(M) \mathbf{- 1 a}$, in THF)

The CD spectra of $(M)$-enantiomer 1a (Figure 4-11) was revealed to show a small positive Cotton around $330.4 \mathrm{~nm}\left(\Delta \varepsilon=+93.7 \mathrm{M}^{-1} \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}\right)$, a large negative Cotton around $256.4 \mathrm{~nm}(\Delta \varepsilon=-$ $\left.193.4 \mathrm{M}^{-1} \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}\right)$, and a large positive band at $212.2 \mathrm{~nm}\left(\Delta \varepsilon=+139.7 \mathrm{M}^{-1} \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}\right)$. The CD spectra of $(P)$-1a showed opposite Cotton, being exactly mirrored image. For ( $M$ )-1a, between 292 nm to 210 nm , the wavelength dependence of the CD curve shows characteristic shapes. Along with the decreasing of wavelength, the plot decreases to a minimum and then increases, passing through zero where the maximum of absorption occurs, as the wavelength is decreased further, it becomes positive, until reaching a maximum. A typical negative Cotton effect pattern is acknowledged. On the contrary, $(P)$-1a shows a positive Cotton effect.


Figure 4-12. CD and UV spectra of amide-functionalized thia[7]helicene-like molecule 1b $\left(1.65 \times 10^{-5} \mathrm{M}\right.$ for $(P)-\mathbf{1 b} ; 1.45 \times 10^{-5} \mathrm{M}$ for $(M)-\mathbf{1 b}$, in THF)

The CD spectra of ( $M$ )-enantiomer 1b (Figure 4-12) was revealed to show a small negative Cotton around $333.2 \mathrm{~nm}\left(\Delta \varepsilon=-50.2 \mathrm{M}^{-1} \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}\right)$, a large negative Cotton around $263.7 \mathrm{~nm}(\Delta \varepsilon=-$ $\left.182.9 \mathrm{M}^{-1} \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}\right)$, and a large positive Cotton around $232.8 \mathrm{~nm}\left(\Delta \varepsilon=+217.2 \mathrm{M}^{-1} \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}\right) .(P)-\mathbf{1 b}$ showed opposite Cotton, being exactly mirrored image. Being similar with $(M) \mathbf{- 1 a},(M)-\mathbf{1 b}$ also presents a negative Cotton effect whereas $(P)-\mathbf{1 b}$ shows positive Cotton effect between 292 nm to 210 nm wavelenghth.


Figure 4-13. Combined CD spectra of 1a and 1b in THF

Both mirror-image plots for the $(M)$ - and $(P)$-enantiomers of $\mathbf{1 a}$ or $\mathbf{1 b}$ are obtained. Thus, the combined CD spectra of [7]helicene-like molecules 1a and 1b can be smoothly obtained (Figure 4-13), which makes it clear to compare with each other. The appearance of same Cotton effect for $(M)$-enantiomers or $(P)$-enantiomers with same trend in CD spectra should be referable for other similar helicene or helicene-like structures in determination of their absolute configurations.

## Conclusion and perspective

In summary, two cyclization methods from biaryl substrates with retention of optical purity was developed to synthesize amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1a, which is optically pure and configurationally stable, showing a special self-assembly behavior caused by common $\pi-\pi$ stacking interactions and unusual hydrogen bonding function together in helicene aggregation. The unique aggregation construction is quite promising in material chemistry, presenting special properties and applications.

Sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b was synthesized through one-pot cyclization and a more direct palladium-catalyzed domino reaction with following deprotection of PMB group, which could be further modified chemically such as sufficient oxidation of sulfur atoms. The sterically hindered and electron withdrawing sulfonyl groups inserted in helical structure might not only improve the acidity of amide group but also function as new hydrogen bonding recognition site.
For newly prepared helicene-like molecules, the racemization barrier energies were revealed to show that amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecules are configurationally stable in umbient termperature. CD spectra might be used for deducing the absolute configuration of similar amide-functionalized helicene-like molecules.

Besides, a variety of biologically important phenantheridinone derivatives were prepared by direct one-pot cyclization, during which, increased stability of phosphate derivatives generated in the first stage was turn out to be originated from the combination of chalcogen bonding interaction and pnictogen bonding interaction.

The author expects that more efficient and applicable methodologies to prepare amidefunctionalized helicene-like molecules could be developed and more interesting properties and applications of these molecules would be discovered.

## References:

1. For selected reviews of helicene and heterohelicene synthesis, see:
(a) Collins, S. K.; Vachon, M. P. Org. Biomol. Chem. 2006, 4, 2518.
(b) Gingras, M. Chem. Soc. Rev. 2013, 42, 968.
(c) Gingras, M.; Félix, G.; Peresutti, R. Chem. Soc. Rev. 2013, 42, 1007.
(d) Shen, Y.; Chen, C.-F. Chem. Rev. 2012, 112, 1463.
(e) Laarhoven, W. H.; Prinsen, W. J. C. Top. Curr. Chem. 1984, 125, 63.
(f) Urbano, A. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2003, 42, 3986.
(g) Saito, N.; Yamaguchi, M. Molecules, 2018, 23, 277.
(h) Hoffman, N. J. Photochem. Photobiol. C Photochem. Rev. 2014, $19,1$.
(i) Virieux, D.; Sevrain, N.; Ayad, T.; Pirat, J.-L. Helical phosphorus derivatives. In Advancesin Heterocyclic Chemistry; Eric, F.V.S.; Christopher, A.R., Eds.; Academic Press: Cambridge, MA, USA, 2015; Vol. 116.
(j) Dhbaibi, K.; Favereau, L.; Crassous, J. Chem. Rev. 2019, 119, 8846.
(k) Hiroto, S. Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn. 2018, 91, 829.
(1) Gataullin, R. R. Russ. J. Org. Chem. 2019, 55, 1247.
(m) Starý, I.; Stará, I. G. Targets Heterocycl. Syst. 2017, 21, 23.
(n) Wang, H. Imaging Science and Photochemistry, 2017, 35, 603.
(o) Hoffman, N. Chem. Rev. 2008, 108, 1052.
(p) Jørgensen, K. B. Molecules, 2010, 15, 4334.
(q) Stará, I. G.; Starý, I. In Aromatic Ring Assemblies, Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons, and Conjugated Polyenes; Siegel, J. S., Tobe, Y., Eds.; Thieme: Stuttgart, 2010; Vol. 45b, pp. 885.
(r) Dumitrascu, F.; Dumitrescu, D. G.; Aronb, I. ARKIVOC, 2010, $1,1$.
(s) Tanaka, K.; Kimura, Y.; Murayama, K. Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn. 2015, 88, 375.
(t) Katz, T. J. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2000, 39, 1921.
2. For selected reviews of helicene properties, see:
(a) Gingras, M. Chem. Sov. Rev. 2013, 42, 1051.
(b) Sawato, T.; Yamaguchi, M. ChemplusChem. 2020, 85, 2017.
(c) Starý, I.; Stará, I. G.; Alexandrova, Z.; Sehnal, P.; Teply, F.; Saman, D.; Rulisek, L. Pure Appl. Chem. 2006, 78, 495.
(d) Wynberg, H. Acc. Chem. Res. 1971, 4, 65.
(e) Rajca, A.; Miyasaka, M. Functional Organic Materials; Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH \& Co. KGaA: Weinheim, Germany, 2007; Chapter 15, pp. 547.
(f) Licandro, E.; Cauteruccio, S.; Dova, D. In Advances in Heterocyclic Chemistry; Scriven,
E. F. V.; Ramsden, C. A., Eds.; Academic Press, 2016; Vol. 118.
(g) Zhao, W.-L.; Li, M.; Lu, H.-Y.; Chen, C.-F. Chem. Commun. 2019, 55, 13793.
3. For selected reviews of helicene applications, see:
(a) Brandt, J. R.; Salerno, F.; Fuchter, M. J. Nat. Rev. Chem. 2017, 1, 0045.
(b) Demmer, C. S.; Voituriez, A.; Marinetti, A. C. R. Chimie. 2017, 20, 860.
(c) OuYang, J.; Crassous, J. Coordination Chemistry Reviews, 2018, 376, 533.
(d) Usui, K. YAKUGAKU ZASSHI, 2017, 137, 1381.
(e) Borovkov, V.; Hasan, M. Symmetry, 2018, 10, 10.
(f) Saleh, N.; Shen, C.; Crassous, J. Chem. Sci. 2014, 5, 3680.
(g) Aillard, P.; Voituriez, A.; Marinetti, A. Dalton Trans. 2014, 43, 15263.
(h) Fang, L.; Lin, W.; Shen, Y.; Chen, C.-F. Chin. J. Org. Chem. 2018, 38, 541.
(i) Chen, J.; Takenaka, N. Chem. Eur. J. 2009, 15, 7268.
4. For selected articles of organic material study of helicenes, see:
(a) Verbiest, T.; Elshocht, S. V.; Persoons, A.; Nuckolls, C.; Phillips, K. E.; Katz, T. J. Langmuir. 2001, 17, 4685.
(b) Verbiest, T.; Elshocht, S. V.; Kauranen, M.; Hellemans, L.; Snauwaert, J.; Nuckolls, C.; Katz, T. J.; Persoons, A. Science, 1998, 282, 913.
(c) Kaseyama, T.; Furumi, S.; Zhang, X.; Tanaka, K.; Takeuchi, M. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2011, 50, 3684.
(d) Phillips, K. E. S.; Katz, T. J.; Jockusch, S.; Lovinger, A. J.; Turro, N. J. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2001, 123, 11899.
(e) Okuyama, T.; Tani, Y.; Miyake, K.; Yokoyama, Y. J. Org. Chem. 2007, 72, 1634.
(f) Hatakeyama, T.; Hashimoto, S.; Oba, T.; Nakamura, M. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2012, 134, 19600.
(g) Shcherbina, M. A.; Zeng, X.-B.; Tadjiev, T.; Ungar, G.; Eichhorn, S. H.; Phillips, K. E. S.; Katz, T. J. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2009, 48, 7837.
(f) Busson, B.; Kauranen, M.; Nuckolls, C.; Katz, T. J.; Persoons, A. Phys. Rev. Lett. 2000, 84, 79.
5. For selected articles of heterohelicene used as catalyst, see:
(a) Takenaka, N.; Sarangthem, R. S.; Captain, B. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2008, 47, 9708.
(b) Takaneka, N.; Chen, J.; Captain, B.; Sarangthem, R. S.; Chandrakumar, A. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2010, 132, 4536.
(c) Chen, J.; Captain, B.; Takenaka, N. Org. Lett. 2011, 13, 1654.
(d) Crittall, M. R.; Rzepa, H. S.; Carbery, D. R. Org. Lett. 2011, 13, 1250.
(e) Yamamoto, T.; Shimizu, T.; Igawa, K.; Tomooka, K.; Hirai, G.; Suemune, H.; Usui, K. Sci. Rep. 2016, 6, 36211.
(f) Magne, V.; Sanogo, Y.; Demmer, C. S.; Retailleau, P.; Marinetti, A.; Guinchard, X.; Voituriez, A. ACS Catal. 2020, 10, 8141.
6. For selected articles for biological applications of helicenes, see:
(a) Nakagawa, H.; Yoshida, M.; Kobori, Y.; Yamada, K. Chirality, 2003, 15, 703.
(b) Honzawa, S.; Okubo, H.; Anzai, S.; Yamaguchi, M.; Tsumoto, K.; Kumagai, I. Bioorg. Med. Chem. 2002, 10, 3213.
(c) Nakagawa, H.; Kobori, Y.; Yoshida, M.; Yamada, K. Chem. Commun. 2001, 24, 2692.
(d) Nakagawa, H.; Gomi, K.; Yamada, K. Chem. Pharm. Bull. 2001. 49, 49.
(e) Nakagawa, H.; Yamada, K. Chem. Pharm. Bull. 2005, 53, 52.
(f) Shinohara, K.; Sannohe, Y.; Kaieda, S.; Tanaka, K.; Osuga, H.; Tahara, H.; Xu, Y.; Kawase, T.; Bando, T.; Sugiyama, H. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2010, 132, 3778.
(g) Xu, Y.; Zhang, Y.-X.; Sugiyama, H.; Umano, T.; Osuga, H.; Tanaka, K. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2004, 126, 6566.
7. For other examples of self-assembly of helicenes, see: ref. 4 and
(a) Usui, K.; Yamamoto, K.; Ueno, Y.; Igawa, K.; Hagihara, R.; Masuda, T.; Ojida, A.; Karasawa, S.; Tomooka, K.; Hirai, G.; Suemune, H. Chem. Eur. J. 2018, 24, 14617.
(b) Hirao, T.; Ono, Y.; Kawata, N.; Haino, T. Org. Lett. 2020, 22, 5294.
(c) Nakano, K.; Oyama, H.; Nishimura, Y.; Nakasako, S.; Nozaki, K. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2012, 51, 695.
(d) Murguly, E.; McDonald, R.; Branda, N. R. Org. Lett. 2000, 2, 3169.
8. Abbate, B.; Bazzini, C.; Caronna, T.; Fontana, F.; Gambarotti, C.; Gangemi, F.; Longhi, G.; Mele, A.; Sora, I. N.; Panzeri, W. Tetrahedron 2006, 62, 139.
9. Talele, H. R.; Sahoo, S.; Bedekar, A. V. Org. Lett. 2012, 14, 3166.
10. Murase, T.; Suto, T.; Suzuki, H. Chem. Asian J. 2017, 12, 726.
11. For selected articles of catalytic asymmetric syntheses by chiral transition-metal catalysts, see:
(a) Grandbois, A.; Collins, S. K. Chem. Eur. J. 2008, 14, 9323.
(b) Nkamura, T.; Frumi, S.; Takeuchi, M; Shibuya, T.; Tanaka, K. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2014, 136, 5555.
(c) Sako, M.; Takeuchi, Y.; Tsujihara, T.; Kodera, J.; Kawano, T.; Takazawa, S.; Sasai, H. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2016, 138, 11481.
(d) Kinoshita, S.; Yamano, R.; Shibata, Y.; Tanaka, Y.; Hanada, K.; Matsumoto, T.; Miyamoto, K.; Muranaka, A.; Uchiyama, M.; Tanaka, K. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2020, 59, 11020.
12. For our previous researches about axially chiral biaryl amino acid compound, see:
(a) Furuta, T.; Yamamoto, J.; Kitamura, Y.; Hashimoto, A.; Masu, H.; Azumaya, I.; Kan, T.;

Kawabata, T. J. Org. Chem. 2010, 75, 7010.
(b) Furuta, T.; Nikaido, M.; Yamamoto, J.; Kuribayashi, T.; Kawabata, T. Synthesis, 2013, 45, 1312.
(c) Murai, T.; Xing, Y.; Kuribayashi, T.; Lu, W.; Guo, J.-D.; Yella, R.; Hamada, S.; Sasamori, T.; Tokitoh, N.; Kawabata, T.; Furuta, T. Chem. Pharm. Bull. 2018, 66, 1203.
13. Ferraccioli, R.; Grenzi, D.; Motti, E.; Catellani, M. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2006, 128, 722.
14. Furuta, T.; Kitamura, Y.; Hashimoto, A.; Fujii, S.; Tanaka, K.; Kan, T. Org. Lett. 2007, 9, 183.
15. Liu, H.; Han, W.; Li, C.; Ma, Z.; Li, R.; Zheng, X.; Fu, H.; Chen, H. Eur. J. Org. Chem. 2016, 389.
16. Fu, W. C.; Wang, Z.; Chan, W. T. K.; Lin, Z.; Kwong, F. Y. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2017, 56, 7166.
17. Hayashi, T.; Iwamura, H.; Uozumi, Y.; Matumoto, Y.; Ozawa, F. Synthesis, 1994, 526.
18. Nakano, K.; Hidehira, Y.; Takahashi, K.; Hiyama, T.; Nozaki, K. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2005, 44, 7136.
19. Konishi, H.; Hoshino, F.; Manabe, K. Chem. Pharm. Bull. 2016, 64, 1438.
20. For chiral recognition and self-sorting of $\pi$-faces in helicenes with flexible $\pi$-core, see:
(a) Amemiya, R.; Yamaguchi, M. Org. Biomol. Chem. 2008, 6, 26.
(b) Safont-Sempere, M. M.; Osswald, P.; Stolte, M.; Grüne, M.; Renz, M.; Kaupp, M.; Radacki, K.; Braunschweig, H.; Würthner, F. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2011, 133, 9580.
21. For amide tautomerization, see:
(a) Forlani, L.; Cristoni, G.; Boga, C.; Todesco, P. E.; Vecchio, E. D.; Selva, S.; Monari, M. ARKIVOC, 2002, 198.
(b) Schlegel, H. B.; Gund, P.; Fluder, E. M. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1982, 104, 5347.
22. For selected examples of biological activity of phenanthridinone derivatives, see:
(a) Shnyder, S. D.; Cooper, P. A.; Millington, N. J.; Gill, J. H.; Bibby, M. C. Nat. Prod. 2008, 71, 321.
(b) Nakamura, M.; Aoyama, A.; Salim, T. A. Bioorg. Med. Chem. 2010, 18, 2420.
(c) Patil, S.; Kamath, S.; Sanchez, T.; Neamati, N.; Schinazi, R. F.; Buolamwini, J. K. Bioorg. Med. Chem. 2007, 15, 1212.
(d) Ishida, J.; Hattori, K.; Yamamoto, H.; Iwashita, A.; Mihara, K.; Matsuoka, N. Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett. 2005, 15, 4221.
(e) Grese, T. A.; Adrian, M. D.; Phillips, D. L.; Shelter, P. K.; Short, L. L. J. Med. Chem. 2001, 44, 2857.
(f) Dow, R. L.; Chou, T. T.; Bechle, B. M.; Goddard, C.; Larson, E. R. J. Med. Chem. 1994, 37, 2224.
(h) Vangrevelinghe, E.; Zimmermann, K.; Schoepfer, J.; Portmann, R.; Fabbro, D.; Furet, P. J. Med. Chem. 2003, 46, 2656.
(i) Pierre, F.; Chua, P. C.; O’Brien, S. E.; Siddiqui-Jain, A.; Bourbon, P.; Haddach, M. J. Med. Chem. 2011, 54, 635.
(j) Pierre, F.; Stefan, E.; Nédellec, A.-S.; Chevrel, M.-C.; Regan, C. F.; Siddiqui-Jain, A. Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett. 2011, 21, 6687.
(k) Antony, S.; Agama, K. K.; Miao, Z.-H.; Takagi, K.; Mollie, H.; Wright, M. H. Cancer Res. 2007, 67, 10397.
(1) Ruchelman, A. L.; Kerrigan, J. E.; Li, T.-K.; Zhou, N.; Liu, A.; Liu, L. F.; LaVoie, E. J. Bioorg. Med. Chem. 2004, 12, 3731.
(m) Lehtiö, L.; Jemth, A.-S.; Collins, R.; Loseva, O.; Johansson, A.; Markova, N. J. Med. Chem. 2009, 52, 3108.
23. For chalcogen-bonding function and pnictogen-bonding function, see:
(a) Cavallo, G.; Metrangolo, P.; Pilati, T.; Resnati, G.; Terraneo, G. Cryst. Growth Des. 2014, 14, 2697.
(b) Nagao, Y.; Hirata, T.; Goto, S.; Sano, S.; Kakehi. A.; Iizuka, K.; Shiro. M. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1998, 120, 3104.
(c) Scilabra, P.; Terraneo, G.; Resnati, G. Acc. Chem. Res. 2019, 52, 1313.
(d) Brammer, L. Faraday Discuss. 2017, 203, 485.
(e) Abbenseth, J.; Goicoechea, J. M. Chem. Sci. 2020, 11, 9728.
24. Carpino, L. A.; Abdel-Maksoud, A. A.; Dumitru, L.; Mansour, E. M. E.; Zewail, M. A. J. Org. Chem. 2007, 72, 1729.
25. Krasodomski, W.; Łuczyn'ski, M. K.; Wilamowski, J.; Sepioł, J. J. Tetrahedron, 2003, 59, 5677.
26. Donati, L.; Leproux, P.; Prost, E.; Michel, S.; Tillequin, F.; Gandon, V.; Porée, F.-H. Chem. Eur. J. 2011, 17, 12809.
27. Yamamoto, Y.; Sakai, H.; Yuasa, J.; Araki, Y.; Wada, T.; Sakanoue, T.; Takenobu, T.; Kawai, T.; Hasobe, T. J. Phys. Chem. C, 2016, 120, 7421.
28. For articles of racemization study of helicene, see:
(a) Martin, R. H. Angew. Chem., Int. Ed. Engl. 1974, 13, 649.
(b) Meurer, K. P.; Vögtle, F. Top. Curr. Chem. 1985, 127, 1.
(c) Wynberg, H.; Groen, M. B. J. Chem. Soc. D: Chem. Commun. 1969, 964.
(d) Yamada, K.; Nakagawa, H.; Kawazura, H. Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn. 1986, 59, 2429.
(e) Lindner, H. J. Tetrahedron, 1975, 31, 281.
(f) Grimme, S.; Peyerimhoff, S. D. Chem. Phys. 1996, 204, 411.
(g) Johansson, M. P.; Patzschke, M. Chem. -Eur. J. 2009, 15, 13210.
(h) Janke, R. H.; Haufe, G.; Würthwein, E. U.; Borkent, J. H. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1996, 118, 6031.
(i) Lebon, F.; Longhi, G.; Gangemi, F.; Abbate, S.; Priess, J.; Juza, M.; Bazzini, C.; Caronna, T.; Mele, A. J. Phys. Chem. A, 2004, 108, 11752.
29. Martin, R. H., Marchant, M. J. Tetrahedron, 1974, 30, 347.

## Experimental Section

## General Information

Melting points were measured by using a Yanagimoto micro melting point apparatus and BUCHI Melting Point M-565 and were uncorrected. NMR spectra were obtained with a JEOL ECX-400 PKT spectrometeror or JEOL ECA-600 spectrometer, chemical shift being given in ppm units ( ${ }^{1} \mathrm{H}$ NMR in $\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ : tetramethylsilane as internal standards, indicating $0,{ }^{13} \mathrm{C}$ NMR in $\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}: \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ as internal standards, indicating 77.0) and spin-spin coupling constants being given in Hz units. IR spectra were recorded with a JASCO FT-IR 4200 spectrometer. The mass spectra (MS) and high-resolution mass spectra (HRMS) were recorded with a JEOL MStation JMS-700 spectrometer (for FAB) or Bruker Daltonics impact HD-KC (for ESI). Specific rotation was measured with JASCO P-2200 polarimeter.

Silica gel column chromatography was carried out by using Silica gel 60 N (spherical, neutral, $63 \sim 210 \mu \mathrm{~m}$, Kanto Chemical Co., Inc.). TLC analysis and preparative TLC (PTLC) were performed on commercial glass plates bearing a 0.25 mm layer and 0.5 mm layer of Merck Kiesel-gel $60 \mathrm{~F}_{254}$, respectively. Analytical HPLC was run with a JASCO PU-2089 Plus instrument, equipped with a Daicel CHIRALPAK IC ( $4.6 \mathrm{~mm} \times 250 \mathrm{~mm}$ ), or CHIRALPAK ADH ( $4.6 \mathrm{~mm} \times 250 \mathrm{~mm}$ ) and a JASCO UV-2075 Plus UV/Vis detector (detection: 254 nm ). Preparative HPLC was run with a JASCO PU-2086 Plus instrument, equipped with a COSMOSIL 5SL-II ( $20 \mathrm{~mm} \times 250 \mathrm{~mm}$ ) and a JASCO UV-2075 Plus UV/Vis detector (detection: 254 nm ).

All chemical reagents were commercially purchased and used without further purification.

## Chapter 2

Scheme S2-1. One-pot synthesis of 3-methoxyphenanthrene 9


3-Methoxyphenanthrene (9)
$\mathrm{Cs}_{2} \mathrm{CO}_{3}$ ( $9.8 \mathrm{~g}, 30 \mathrm{mmol}, 3.0$ equiv.), 2-bromobenzoic acid ( $4.2 \mathrm{~g}, 20 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.), $\mathrm{Pd}(\mathrm{OAc})_{2}$ ( $115 \mathrm{mg}, 0.5 \mathrm{mmol}, 5 \mathrm{~mol} \%$ ), $\mathrm{PCy}_{3}(420 \mathrm{mg}, 1.5 \mathrm{mmol}, 15 \mathrm{~mol} \%$ ), 4-iodoanisole ( $2.3 \mathrm{~g}, 10 \mathrm{mmol}$, 1.0 equiv.) and magnetic stir bar were loaded to a 500 mL flask. The flask was carefully evacuated and backfilled with Argon for three cycles. Norbornadiene ( $2.6 \mathrm{~mL}, 25 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.5$ equiv.) and 1,4-dioxane ( 200 mL ) were added by syringe and the flask was placed into oil bath $\left(130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$ and stirred for 18 h . After completion of reaction, the reaction flask was allowed to reach rt . gradually. Then after filtration and the residue being washed by AcOEt, the collected filtrate was concentrated to obtain crude oil. The resulting oil was then diluted with AcOEt and washed sequentially with $1 N$ aq. HCl , sat. aq. $\mathrm{NH}_{4} \mathrm{Cl}$ and brine. The separated organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to give crude product. The resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane) to furnish 9 ( $1.3 \mathrm{~g}, 64 \%$ ).
The spectral data was identical to the literature data ${ }^{1}$.

Scheme S2-2. Demethylation of 3-methoxyphenanthrene 9


3-Phenanthrenol (10)
3-Methoxyphenanthrene 9 ( $1.3 \mathrm{~g}, 6.4 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) was dissolved in dry $\mathrm{DCM}(30 \mathrm{~mL})$. The solution was chilled to $0{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, and $\mathrm{BBr}_{3}(12.8 \mathrm{~mL}, 12.8 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) was added dropwise. After finishing adding, the ice bath was removed and the resulting mixture was stirred at rt . for 18 h . The reaction was allowed to stopped until TLC showed a complete consume. MeOH ( 20 mL ) was added to the reaction mixture to decompose excess $\mathrm{BBr}_{3}$ while cooled to $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Next, the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was finally purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=9: 1\right)$ to give target compound $\mathbf{1 0}(1.1 \mathrm{~g}$, $86 \%)$.
The spectral data was identical to the literature data ${ }^{2}$.

Scheme S2-3. Synthesis of diol ( $d l$ )-11 by oxidative coupling

(dl)-4,4'-Bisphenanthryl-3,3'-diol (11)

A solution of 3-phenanthrenol $\mathbf{1 0}$ ( $1.1 \mathrm{~g}, 5.5 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{CuCl}_{2}(1.5 \mathrm{~g}, 10.9 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) in degassed $\mathrm{MeOH}(30 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at Argon atmosphere at ice bath for 30 min . A solution of 1-phenylethylamine ( $5.6 \mathrm{~mL}, 43.7 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) in $\mathrm{MeOH}(20 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added slowly over a period of 5 min under Argon protection at ice bath. The resulted solution was allowed to stir at rt. for 24 h until TLC showed a complete reaction. Then, the reaction mixture was cooled down to $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and 6 N aq. HCl was carefully added until the mixture turn to be clear solution. The resulting solution was quenched by water $(50 \mathrm{~mL})$ and then extracted by $\mathrm{AcOEt}(50$ $\mathrm{mL})$ for three times. The organic layers were combined and washed with sat. aq. $\mathrm{NH}_{4} \mathrm{Cl}$ and brine. Next, the organic phase was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The resulted crude product was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to give $(d l)-11(0.9 \mathrm{~g}, 82 \%)$.
The spectral data was identical to the literature data ${ }^{3}$.

Scheme S2-4. Optical resolution of diol (dl)-11


Synthesis of ( $S$ )- and ( $R$ )-3,3'-bis\{[(1S,4R)-7,7-dimethyl-2-oxobicyclo[2.2.1]hept-1-yl]methanesulfonyloxy $\}-4,4$ '-biphenanthryl $[(S, S, R)-\mathbf{1 3}$ and $(R, S, R)-\mathbf{1 3}]$.
A 30 mL flask was fitted with a 10 mL addition funnel containing a solution of ( $1 S$ )-camphor-10sulfonyl chloride ( $1.8 \mathrm{~g}, 7.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 3.0$ equiv.) in DMF ( 2.5 mL ) was charged with dialcohol ( $d l$ )$\mathbf{1 1}$ ( $0.9 \mathrm{~g}, 2.33 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.), 4 -( $N$, $N$-dimethylamino)pyridine ( $14.2 \mathrm{mg}, 0.12 \mathrm{mmol}, 5 \mathrm{~mol} \%$ ), triethylamine ( 5 mL ), and DMF ( 2.5 mL ). After a solution of acid chloride in DMF was slowly
added with stirring at ice bath, the resulted mixture was stirred at rt. for 15 h . The reaction was quenched with water, and then the organic layer was separated. After the aqueous layer was extracted with AcOEt ( $20 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3$ ), the combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the crude residue by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}\right.$, toluene : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=10: 1\right)$ gave $(R, S, R)-13(930.5 \mathrm{mg}, 49 \%)$, and (S,S,R)-13 (892.5 mg, 47\%).

Absolute configurations of $(S, S, R) \mathbf{- 1 3}$ and $(R, S, R)-\mathbf{1 3}$ were identified by the reported ${ }^{1} \mathrm{H}$ NMR data ${ }^{3}$.

Scheme S2-5. Hydrolysis of disulfonate ( $S, S, R$ )-13

(S)-4,4’-Biphenanthryl-3,3'-diol (11)

A 30 mL round bottom flask fitted with reflux condenser was charged with $(S) \mathbf{- 1 3}(892.5 \mathrm{mg}, 1.1$ $\mathrm{mmol})$, THF $(7 \mathrm{~mL}), \mathrm{MeOH}(3 \mathrm{~mL})$ and $2 \mathrm{Naq} . \mathrm{NaOH}(3 \mathrm{~mL})$. The reaction mixture was refluxed for 15 h . The whole mixture was cooled to r.t. and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove most of THF and MeOH . The resulting mixture was diluted by water and then acidified with 1 N aq. HCl . The aqueous phase was extracted by AcOEt three times ( 10 mL ), and the combined organic layers were then washed by water and brine. Then organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. Purification of the crude residue by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, \mathrm{AcOEt}: n\right.$-hexane $\left.=1: 2\right)$ gave $(S) \mathbf{- 1 1}(402 \mathrm{mg}, 97 \%,>99 \%$ ee $)$.

(R)-11

Optically pure ( $R$ )-11 (97\% yield) was obtained as the same procedure of hydrolysis of $(R, S, R)-$
13.

Scheme S2-6. Preparation of triflate from diol ( $d l$ )-11

( $d l$ )-3,3'-Bis(trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy)-4,4'-biphenanthryl (12)
A mixture of ( $d l$ )-diol 11 ( $403.8 \mathrm{mg}, 1.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and pyridine $(0.4 \mathrm{~mL}, 5.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 5.0$ equiv.) in DCM ( 10 mL ) was placed in a 50 mL flask at ice bath. To this solution was added trifluoromethanesulfonic acid anhydride ( $0.7 \mathrm{~mL}, 4.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 4.0$ equiv.) at ice bath. After the reaction mixture was stirred at rt . for 9 h , AcOEt ( 30 mL ) was added. The resulted mixture was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(30 \mathrm{~mL})$ twice, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}$ and brine. The organic layer was separated and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and evaporated in vacuo to obtain crude residue. The resulted residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to give a colorless solid ( $d l$ )-12 ( $552 \mathrm{mg}, 85 \%$ ).
The spectral data was identical to the literature data ${ }^{4}$.

(R)-12

(S)-12

Synthesis of optically pure $\mathbf{1 2}$ by the substitution of corresponding optically pure $\mathbf{1 1}$ was as same as racemic form.
$(R)-\mathbf{1 2}, 77 \%$ yield; ( $S$ )-12, $83 \%$ yield .

Scheme S2-7. Preparation of phenyl formate


## Phenyl formate

Formic acid ( $16.2 \mathrm{~mL}, 420.8 \mathrm{mmol}, 10.0$ equiv.) was added to acetic anhydride ( $32.0 \mathrm{~mL}, 328.4$ mmol, 7.8 equiv.) at rt . The resulted mixture was stirred at $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 1 h and was cooled to rt . Phenol ( $4.0 \mathrm{~g}, 42.2$ mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(7.2 \mathrm{~g}, 84.8 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) were added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred for about 4 h until starting material was consumed. The reaction was quenched adding a mixture of $\mathrm{DCM}(50 \mathrm{~mL})$ and water $(100 \mathrm{~mL})$, and the biphasic system was stirred vigorously. The organic phase was separated, and the aqueous phase was extracted with DCM ( 50 mL ) twice. The combined organic phases were washed with water $(3 \times$ $100 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine $(100 \mathrm{~mL})$, and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure for giving a resulting residue which was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n-\right.$ hexane : AcOEt = $95: 5)$ to afford phenyl formate as colorless oil ( $4.02 \mathrm{~g}, 78 \%$ ).

The spectral data was identical to the literature data ${ }^{5}$.

Scheme S2-8. Esterification of ditriflate ( $d l$ )-12

( $d l$ )-Diphenyl 4,4'-biphenanthryl-3,3'-dicarboxylate (14a)
(dl)-Ditriflate $12{ }^{10}$ ( $552 \mathrm{mg}, 0.85 \mathrm{mmol} .1 .0$ equiv.), $\mathrm{Pd}(\mathrm{OAc})_{2}(19 \mathrm{mg}, 0.085 \mathrm{mmol}, 10 \mathrm{~mol} \%$ ) and DPPP ( $53 \mathrm{mg}, 0.128 \mathrm{mmol}, 15 \mathrm{~mol} \%$ ) were added to a screw-capped 30 mL reaction tube containing a magnetic stirring bar. The tube was evacuated and backfilled with Argon for three times. Phenyl formate ( $762 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 6.79 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.8 \mathrm{~mL}, 10.2 \mathrm{mmol}, 12$ equiv.) were added to the tube under a flow of Argon and the tube was equipped with a screw cap. The reaction mixture was heated to $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ in an oil bath and stirred for 36 h . The reaction mixture was cooled to rt. and diluted with $\mathrm{CH}_{2} \mathrm{Cl}_{2}$, washed with water and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The resulted residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=5: 1\right)$ to afford $(d l) \mathbf{- 1 4 a}(170 \mathrm{mg}, 34 \%)$.

Colorless prisms ( $n$-hexane-AcOEt); m.p. 229-230 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 8.20(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.12(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.87(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.2$ $\mathrm{Hz}, 4 \mathrm{H}), 7.84-7.81(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.66(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.37(\mathrm{t}, J=7.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.15-7.11(\mathrm{~m}, 4 \mathrm{H})$, 7.03 (t, $J=7.3 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.95-6.91(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.40-6.37(\mathrm{~m}, 4 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $100 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 166.4,150.4,140.6,136.0,133.7,130.8,130.2,130.1,129.9$, 129.4, 129.0, 128.9, 127.6, 127.2, 126.8, 126.6, 126.3, 125.4, 121.1;

IR (neat) 3057, 1750, 1725, 1587, 1495, 1260, 1189, 1161, 1120, 1049, 1024, 921, 841, $746 \mathrm{~cm}^{-}$ ${ }^{1}$.;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{42} \mathrm{H}_{26} \mathrm{NaO}_{4}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{Na})^{+} 617.1723$, found. 617.1721.

(R)-14a

(S)-14a

Synthesis of optically pure 14a by the esterification of corresponding optically pure $\mathbf{1 2}$ was as same as racemic form.
(R)-14a, $34 \%$ yield, m.p. $84-85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
C, $[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{22}=-125.8\left(\mathrm{c}=0.46, \mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right) ;(S) \mathbf{- 1 4 a}, 32 \%$ yield.

Scheme S2-9. Hydrolysis of diester (dl)-14a

( $d l$ )-4,4'-Biphenanthryl-3,3'-dicarboxylic acid (6a)
To a solution of $(d l)$-dicarboxylic acid $\mathbf{1 4 a}(170 \mathrm{mg}, 0.29 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) dissolved in MeOH $(20 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added the solution of $\mathrm{KOH}(651 \mathrm{mg}, 11.6 \mathrm{mmol}, 40$ equiv.) in water ( 5.0 mL ). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir for 48 h under reflux conditions. The resulting mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to remove solvent, giving crude residue. Then the residue was dissolved in water $(50 \mathrm{~mL})$. The aqueous phase was washed by $\mathrm{Et}_{2} \mathrm{O}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$, and then the aqueous phase was acidified by 6.0 M aq. HCl until the pH turn to be $1 \sim 2$. The resulting suspension was extracted by $\mathrm{AcOEt}(15 \mathrm{~mL})$ for three times. The combined organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$, brine, and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered, and evaporated in vacuo to give ( $d l$ )-6a (108 mg, 82\%).

Colorless prisms (AcOEt); m.p. 264-265 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(400 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, acetone- $\left.d_{6}\right) \delta 8.11(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.99(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.85(\mathrm{~d}, J=$ $9.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.74(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.67$ (d, $J=7.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.20-7.10(\mathrm{~m}, 4 \mathrm{H}), 6.65(\mathrm{q}, J=$ $8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}$ );
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 100 MHz , acetone- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 169.3,142.0,136.8,134.8,132.4,132.2,131.0,130.6,130.3$, 130.0, 128.6, 128.4, 127.6, 127.3, 126.8;

IR (neat) $3050,1696,1592,1556,1517,1419,1375,1317,1269,1227,1201,1170,1068,1008$, 888, 867, 849, $745 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{30} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 442.1205$, found. 442.1208.

$(R)-\mathbf{6 a}$

(S)-6a

Synthesis of optically pure $\mathbf{6 a}$ by hydrolysis of corresponding optically pure diester $\mathbf{1 4 a}$ was as same as racemic form.
$(R)-\mathbf{6 a}, 87 \%$ yield, m.p. $250-251^{\circ} \mathrm{C},[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}^{22}=-44.2(\mathrm{c}=0.59$, acetone $) ;(S)-\mathbf{6 a}, 84 \%$ yield.

Scheme S2-10. Selective monomethylation of dicarboxylic acid (dl)-6a


6a


12 h


4
(dl)-3'-(Methoxycarbonyl)-4,4'-biphenanthrene-3-carboxylic acid (4)

To a solution of (dl)-dicarboxylic acid $\mathbf{6 a}$ ( $108 \mathrm{mg}, 0.24 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.), and $\mathrm{Ag}_{2} \mathrm{CO}_{3}(33 \mathrm{mg}$, $0.12 \mathrm{mmol}, 0.5$ equiv.) in acetone ( 5.0 mL ) was added $\mathrm{MeI}(45 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.72 \mathrm{mmol}, 3.0$ equiv.) at rt. After stirring at $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 12 h , the reaction was diluted by water ( 20 mL ) and quenched with 1 N aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5.0 \mathrm{~mL})$, and extracted with $\mathrm{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ for three times. The combined organic layer was washed with water, brine, and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give a residue, which was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : AcOEt : $\mathrm{AcOH}=100$ : $100: 1)$ to afford ( $d l$ ) $-4(60 \mathrm{mg}, 54 \%)$.

Colorless prisms (AcOEt); m.p. $265-266^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 8.12-8.01(\mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 7.91(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.87-7.77(\mathrm{~m}, 6 \mathrm{H})$, $7.51(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.43(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.36-7.32(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.90-6.83(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.19(\mathrm{~d}$, $J=15.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $100 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 170.7,169.4,140.4,139.7,135.9,135.7,133.7,133.6,130.9$, $130.6,130.2,130.1,130.0,129.7,129.5,129.4,129.0,128.9,127.4,127.12,127.09,126.8,126.7$, $126.59,126.56,126.54,126.34,126.29,52.1$ (Two carbon signals were overlapped.);
IR ( $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ ) 3426, 1691, 1542, 1383, 1266, 1058, $745 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (FAB) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{31} \mathrm{H}_{20} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 456.1362$, found 456.1362.

(R)-4

(S)-4

Synthesis of optically pure $\mathbf{4}$ by monomethylation of corresponding dicarboxylic acid $\mathbf{6 a}$ was as same as racemic form.
$(R)-4,40 \%$ yield, m.p. $252-253^{\circ} \mathrm{C},[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{22}=-79.8\left(\mathrm{c}=0.11, \mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right) ;(S)-4,43 \%$ yield.

Scheme S2-11. Intramolecular cyclization to amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule ( $d l$ )-1 $\mathbf{1}$ from monomethyl ester $(d l)-\mathbf{4}$

(dl)-Amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule (1a)

To a solution of monomethyl ester ( $d l$ ) $\mathbf{- 4}(25 \mathrm{mg}, 55 \mu \mathrm{~mol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 2.0 mL ) were added DPPA ( $17 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 77 \mu \mathrm{~mol}, 1.4$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}\left(13 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.17 \mathrm{mmol}, 3.0\right.$ equiv.) at $0{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under argon atmosphere. Then, the mixture was stirred for 1.5 h at $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. After cooling to rt., the mixture was treated with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}(1.0 \mathrm{~mL})$ and then the resulted solution was stirred at $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 42 h . Then the reaction was extracted with $\mathrm{EtOAc}(5.0 \mathrm{~mL})$ for three times. The combined organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered, and evaporated in vacuo to give the crude product. The crude product
was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $\left.: \mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1\right)$ to afford $(d l) \mathbf{- 1 a}(11$ $\mathrm{mg}, 51 \%$ ).

Yellow prisms ( $n$-hexane-AcOEt); m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{DMSO}-d_{6}$ ) $\delta 12.23(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.43(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.13(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 8.07(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.88(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.76-7.69(\mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 7.49(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.42(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.3 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.36(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.05(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.99-6.92(\mathrm{~m}$, $2 \mathrm{H}), 6.84$ (d, $J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.40-6.30(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 100 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 161.9,136.8,134.6,132.5,132.3,132.0,131.1,129.8,129.5$, $129.1,128.8,128.7,128.3,127.5,127.44,127.39,126.7,126.4,126.3,126.25,126.19,125.9$, $124.2,124.10,124.06,123.4,116.8,111.9$ (One carbon signal was overlapped.);
IR $\left(\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right) 3049,2872,1657,1603,794,719 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (FAB) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{NO}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 396.1373$, found 396.1388 .

Crystallographic data for the single crystal of racemic 1a obtained by recrystallization from toluene and $n$-hexane: $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{NO}, \mathrm{M}=395.43$, monoclinic, $P 2_{1}, a=9.0465(2), b=11.3071$ (3), $c$ $=19.1900(5) \AA, \alpha=90^{\circ}, \beta=95.411(2)^{\circ}, \gamma=90^{\circ}, V=1954.19(8) \AA^{3}, Z=4, \rho_{\text {calcd }}=1.317 \mathrm{gcm}^{-3}$, $T=103 \mathrm{~K}, 22156$ reflections measured, 7194 unique. The final $R_{1}$ and $w R$ were 0.0587 and 0.1787 (all data). These data have been deposited with the Cambridge Crystallographic Data Center as CCDC 2031916.

(M)-1 $\mathbf{a}$

(P)-1a
$(M)$ - and $(P)$-1a were prepared by intramolecular cyclization of monomethyl ester $(R)$ - and $(S)$ - $\mathbf{4}$ in $53 \%$ and $48 \%$, respectively, according to the same procedure as racemic form.
$(M)-1 \mathbf{a},>99 \%$ ee, $53 \%$ yield, m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C} ;[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{18}=+1954.5(\mathrm{c}=0.2, \mathrm{DMSO}) ; \mathrm{CD} \lambda_{\text {ext }}(\mathrm{THF})$ $\mathrm{nm}(\Delta \varepsilon): 356$ (55.01), 330 (93.66), 319 (87.21), 256 ( -193.38 ), 212 (139.71). UV $\lambda_{\max }$ (THF) nm $(\log \varepsilon): 310 \operatorname{sh}(4.26), 263$ (4.64), 225sh (4.97).
$(P)-1 \mathbf{1 a},>98 \%$ ee, $48 \%$ yield, m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C} ;[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{19}=+1660\left(\mathrm{c}=0.1, \mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right) ; \mathrm{CD} \lambda_{\text {ext }}(\mathrm{THF}) \mathrm{nm}$ $(\Delta \varepsilon): 356(-56.64), 330(-96.89), 319(-90.88), 256(186.7), 213(-142.84)$.

Scheme S2-12. Isolation of amine intermediate ( $d l$ )-5 during intramolecular cyclization towards (dl)-1a

(dl)-methyl 3'-amino-[4,4'-biphenanthrene]-3-carboxylate (5)

To a solution of monomethyl ester ( $d l$ ) $\mathbf{- 4}(25 \mathrm{mg}, 55 \mu \mathrm{~mol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 2.0 mL ) were added DPPA ( $17 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 77 \mu \mathrm{~mol}, 1.4$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}\left(13 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.17 \mathrm{mmol}, 3.0\right.$ equiv.) at $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under argon atmosphere. Then, the mixture was stirred for 1.5 h at $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Then, $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}(1.0 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added, the reaction was stopped after stirring at $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for another 1.5 h . After cooling to rt , the mixture was quenched with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$. Then the reaction was extracted with AcOEt (5.0 mL ) for three times. The combined organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered, and evaporated in vacuo to give the crude product. The crude product was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1\right)$ to afford $(d l)-5(15 \mathrm{mg}, 64 \%)$.

Green prisms (n-hexana-AcOEt); m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 8.48(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.17-8.00(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.97-7.81(\mathrm{~m}, 5 \mathrm{H})$, $7.78-7.69(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.67-7.62(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.57-7.52(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.45(\mathrm{t}, J=7.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.30-7.26(\mathrm{~m}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.10-6.99(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.86-6.79(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 3.41(\mathrm{~s}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.00(\mathrm{~s}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $100 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 169.1,143.2,137.3,135.6,134.0,133.4,133.2,131.2,130.7$, $130.5,130.4,129.9,129.5,129.3,128.9,128.4,127.5,127.4,127.2,127.1,126.6,125.9,125.5$, 125.2, 124.3, 121.2, 117.2, 51.8 (Two carbon signals were overlapped.);

IR (neat) $3470,2960,2853,1730,1603,1157,1129,842,798,746 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{30} \mathrm{H}_{22} \mathrm{NO}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 428.1645$, found. 428.1633 .

## Chapter 3

Optimization of reaction conditions for direct one-pot cyclization to phenanthridinone 1d
Scheme S3-1. Preparation of biaryl dicarboxylic acid


General procedure for synthesis of phenanthridinone 1d by one-pot cyclization To a solution of diphenic acid $\mathbf{6 d}(24.2 \mathrm{mg}, 0.1 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in dry solvent ( 5.0 mL ), DPPA and base were added at rt . under Argon atmosphere. Then, the mixture was stirred and heated for scheduled time. After cooling to rt, the mixture was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the residue. Next, the crude residue was dissolved in the mixed solvent of $\mathrm{MeOH} / \mathrm{THF}(3 \mathrm{~mL} / 6 \mathrm{~mL})$ and 2 N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(0.5 \mathrm{~mL}, 1.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 10.0$ equiv.) was added. The resulted mixture was allowed to stir at rt . for 12 h . The resulted mixture was concentrated and then diluted with $\mathrm{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$. The organic phase was washed with water $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ for three times and brine $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$, and the resulted organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. Finally the crude product was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $\left.: \mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 2\right)$ to afford phenanthridinone 1d.

Scheme S3-2. Scale-up reaction to synthesize 1d with optimized conditions


To a solution of diphenic acid $\mathbf{6 d}(2.0 \mathrm{~g}, 8.26 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 60 mL ), DPPA ( 3.6 $\mathrm{mL}, 16.5 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) and DIPEA ( $8.7 \mathrm{~mL}, 49.6 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . under Argon atmosphere. Then, the mixture was stirred and heated for 12 h . After cooling to rt., the mixture was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the residue. Next, the crude residue was dissolved in the mixed solvent of $\mathrm{MeOH} / \mathrm{THF}(30 \mathrm{~mL} / 60 \mathrm{~mL})$ and 2 N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(41 \mathrm{~mL}, 82.6 \mathrm{mmol}, 10.0$ equiv.) was added. The resulted mixture was allowed to stir at rt . for 12 h . The resulted mixture was concentrated and then diluted with $\mathrm{AcOEt}(50 \mathrm{~mL})$. The organic phase was washed with 1 N aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(30 \mathrm{~mL})$ for three times, water $(50 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine $(20 \mathrm{~mL})$, and the resulted organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to
obtain the crude product. The crude product was washed by mixture of $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}: n$-hexane (1:1). Finally the preliminarily purified product was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}\right.$, $n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=1: 1$ ) to afford phenanthridinone $\mathbf{1 d}(1.3 \mathrm{~g}, 80 \%)$.

The spectral data was identical to the literature data ${ }^{6}$.

Scheme S3-3. Preparation of dicarboxylic acid 6



Dimethyl 4,4'-difluoro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (14f)
A solution of methyl 2-bromo-5-fluorobenzoate ( $3.16 \mathrm{~g}, 13.6 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and Cu powder ( $6.89 \mathrm{~g}, 108 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) in DMF ( 10 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 16 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt , the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $\left.: \mathrm{AcOEt}=9: 1\right)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 4 f}(1.85 \mathrm{~g}, 89 \%)$.

## Colorless oil.

${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 7.71(\mathrm{dd}, J=9.3,2.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.20-7.30(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.15(\mathrm{dd}, J=$ $8.4,5.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}$ ), 3.66 ( $\mathrm{s}, 6 \mathrm{H}$ );
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 166.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.3 \mathrm{~Hz}), 161.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=246 \mathrm{~Hz}), 138.3(\mathrm{~d}, J=3.8 \mathrm{~Hz})$, $132.1(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 131.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 118.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=21 \mathrm{~Hz}), 117.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=23 \mathrm{~Hz}), 52.3$;
IR (neat) 1718, 1479, 1436, 1238, 1185, 1069, 980, 826, 787, $753 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{12} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$306.0704, found. 306.0707.


4,4'-Difluoro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid (6f)
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 f}(1.75 \mathrm{~g}, 5.71 \mathrm{mmol})$ in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH}(2: 1,30 \mathrm{~mL}), 2 N \mathrm{aq} . \mathrm{NaOH}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at rt . for 68 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 N$ aq. HCl , and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6 f}(1.51 \mathrm{~g}$, $95 \%$ ). This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

White solid; m.p. $240-241^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, acetone- $\left.d_{6}\right) \delta 11.22(\mathrm{~s}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.74(\mathrm{dd}, J=9.6,2.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.39-7.35(\mathrm{~m}$, $2 \mathrm{H}), 7.29$ (dd, $J=8.5,5.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz , acetone- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 166.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 162.4(\mathrm{~d}, J=244 \mathrm{~Hz}), 139.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=$ $3.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 133.5(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 132.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 119.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=21 \mathrm{~Hz}), 117.3(\mathrm{~d}, J=24 \mathrm{~Hz})$; IR (neat) 2851, 1707, 1421, 1250, 1201, 929, 885, 825, 758, $517 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;

HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{14} \mathrm{H}_{8} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$278.0391, found. 278.0394.


6h
5,5'-Dinitro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid (6h)
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 h}^{7}(2.87 \mathrm{~g}, 7.96 \mathrm{mmol})$ in THF/MeOH ( $1: 1,80 \mathrm{~mL}$ ), 1 N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(40 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at rt . for 72 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with conc. HCl , and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give the residue. The residue was recrystallized from acetone/ $n$-hexane to give $\mathbf{6 h}(2.26 \mathrm{~g}, 85 \%)$.

Yellow solid; m.p. $266-267{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{DMSO}-d_{6}$ ) $\delta 8.39(\mathrm{dd}, J=2.4,8.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.22(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H})$,
8.16 (d, $J=2.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}$ );
${ }^{13}$ C NMR (75 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta$ 167.1, 149.7, 143.1, 136.9, 132.1, 125.9, 123.8;
IR (neat) $3430,3092,2642,1711,1682,1527,1352,1296,1256,806,742 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI-) m/z calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{14} \mathrm{H}_{7} \mathrm{~N}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{8}(\mathrm{M}-\mathrm{H})^{+}$331.0208, found. 331.0207.


14i
Dimethyl 5,5'-difluoro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (14i)
A solution of methyl 2-bromo-4-fluorobenzoate ( $5.56 \mathrm{~g}, 23.9 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and Cu powder ( $12.1 \mathrm{~g}, 191 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) in DMF ( 10 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 16 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt., the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $\left.: \mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 4 i}(2.79 \mathrm{~g}, 76 \%)$.

Colorless oil.
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 8.07(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.8,5.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.05-7.20(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.90(\mathrm{dd}, J=$ $9.0,2.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.64$ (s, 6H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 166.1,164.4(\mathrm{~d}, J=253 \mathrm{~Hz}), 145.4(\mathrm{dd}, J=9.0,1.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 132.8(\mathrm{~d}$, $J=9.0 \mathrm{~Hz}), 125.4(\mathrm{~d}, J=3.0 \mathrm{~Hz}), 117.3(\mathrm{~d}, J=22 \mathrm{~Hz}), 114.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=21 \mathrm{~Hz}), 52.1$;

IR (KBr) 1719, 1578, 1434, 1252, 1100, 873, 844, 778, 699, $602 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{12} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$306.0704, found. 306.0707.

$6 i$
5,5'-Difluoro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid (6i)

To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 i}(2.71 \mathrm{~g}, 8.85 \mathrm{mmol})$ in THF/MeOH ( $2: 1,30 \mathrm{~mL}), 2 N$ aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at rt . for 67 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 N$ aq. HCl , and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6 i}(2.37 \mathrm{~g}$, $96 \%$ ). This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

White solid; m.p. $236-237{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, acetone- $\left.d_{6}\right) \delta 11.02(\mathrm{~s}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.13(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.7,6.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.29-7.14(\mathrm{~m}$, 2 H ), 7.04 (dd, $J=9.5,2.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}$ );
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz , acetone- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 166.7,165.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=250 \mathrm{~Hz}), 146.8(\mathrm{dd}, J=10,1.3 \mathrm{~Hz})$, $133.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=10 \mathrm{~Hz}), 126.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 117.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=23 \mathrm{~Hz}), 114.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=21 \mathrm{~Hz})$;
IR (neat) 2815, 1675, 1575, 1403, 1253, 1211, 887, 838, 785, $603 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{14} \mathrm{H}_{8} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$278.0391, found. 278.0393.


14j
Dimethyl 5,5'-dimethyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (14j)
A solution of methyl 2-bromo-4-methylbenzoate ( $2.09 \mathrm{~g}, 9.12 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and activated $\mathrm{Cu}\left(4.64 \mathrm{~g}, 73.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0\right.$ equiv.) in DMF ( 10 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 63 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt., the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : AcOEt $=4: 1)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 4 j}(1.20 \mathrm{~g}, 88 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. $85-86^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 7.90(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.28-7.12(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.01-6.84(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$, 3.60 (s, 6H), 2.39 (s, 6H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 167.3,143.7,142.0,130.9,129.9,127.8,126.5,51.6,21.5 ;$
IR (neat) 1721, 1604, 1427, 1278, 1247, 1077, 1050, 834, 775, $701 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$298.1205, found. 298.1205 .


6j
5,5'-Dimethyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid ( $\mathbf{6 j}$ )
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 j}(1.06 \mathrm{~g}, 3.55 \mathrm{mmol})$ in THF/MeOH $(2: 1,15 \mathrm{~mL}), 2 N \mathrm{aq} . \mathrm{NaOH}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 18 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 N$ aq. HCl , and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6 j}$ ( 937 mg , $98 \%$ ). This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

White amorphous;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, acetone- $\left.d_{6}\right) \delta 10.80(\mathrm{~s}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.89(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.24(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.0,1.8$ $\mathrm{Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.98(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 2.39(\mathrm{~s}, 6 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( 75 MHz , acetone- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 168.2$, 145.1, 142.4, 131.9, 131.0, 128.3, 127.8, 21.3;
IR (neat) 2869, 1690, 1604, 1570, 1413, 1290, 1265, 787, 603, $440 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{z}$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{14} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$270.0892, found. 270.0892.


14k
Dimethyl 6,6'-difluoro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (14k)
A solution of methyl 2-bromo-3-fluorobenzoate ( $4.64 \mathrm{~g}, 19.9 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and Cu powder ( $10.1 \mathrm{~g}, 159 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) in DMF ( 20 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 15 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt., the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $\left.: \mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to afford $14 \mathrm{k}(2.47 \mathrm{~g}, 81 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. $109-110{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 7.93-7.87(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.52-7.42(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.37-7.28(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.66(\mathrm{~s}$, 6 H );
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 166.2-166.0(\mathrm{~m}), 159.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=244.9 \mathrm{~Hz}), 131.6(\mathrm{t}, J=1.9 \mathrm{~Hz})$, $129.7-129.3(\mathrm{~m}), 126.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.9 \mathrm{~Hz}), 123.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=19.0 \mathrm{~Hz}), 119.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=23.4 \mathrm{~Hz}), 52.3$;
IR (neat) 3431, 2952, 1725, 1443, 1276, 1200, 1145, 1010, $893,826,759 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{12} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 306.0704$, found. 306.0704.


6k
6,6'-Difluoro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid ( $\mathbf{6 k}$ )
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 k}(2.42 \mathrm{~g}, 7.90 \mathrm{mmol})$ in THF/MeOH ( $2: 1,30 \mathrm{~mL}$ ), 2 N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt. After being stirred at $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 62 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 N \mathrm{aq} . \mathrm{HCl}$, and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6 k}(2.14 \mathrm{~g}$, $97 \%$ ).This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

White amorphous;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 300 MHz , methanol- $d_{4}$ ) $\delta 7.91-7.85(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.55-7.45(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.39-7.33(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR $\left(75 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, methanol- $\left.d_{4}\right) \delta 168.8,161.1(\mathrm{~d}, J=242.9 \mathrm{~Hz}), 133.7,130.3(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.0 \mathrm{~Hz})$, $127.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.9 \mathrm{~Hz}), 125.4(\mathrm{~d}, J=19.0 \mathrm{~Hz}), 119.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=23.7 \mathrm{~Hz})$;
IR (neat) 2992, 2873, 2662, 2539, 1686, 1440, 1412, 1264, 933, $767 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{14} \mathrm{H}_{8} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 278.0391$, found. 278.0391.


141
Dimethyl 6,6'-dimethyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (141)
A solution of methyl 2-bromo-3-methylbenzoate ( $4.60 \mathrm{~g}, 20.1 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and Cu powder ( $10.2 \mathrm{~g}, 161 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) in DMF ( 20 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 15 h . After
the reaction was cooled to rt , the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 4 1}(2.19 \mathrm{~g}, 73 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. $39-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 7.89-7.84(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.46-7.42(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.33(\mathrm{t}, J=7.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H})$, 3.58 (s, 6H), 1.91 (d, J=0.7 Hz, 6H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 167.6,141.3,136.7,133.7,129.4,127.8,127.0,51.8,20.1$;
IR (neat) 3430, 2952, 1726, 1432, 1264, 1193, 1145, 1010, 870, $763 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 298.1205$, found. 298.1203.


6,6'-Dimethyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid (61)
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 1}(234 \mathrm{mg}, 784 \mu \mathrm{~mol})$ in THF/MeOH ( $2: 1,15 \mathrm{~mL}$ ), 2 N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(5.0 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 168 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 \mathrm{Naq} . \mathrm{HCl}$, and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6}$ ( $205 \mathrm{mg}, 97 \%$ ).This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

White solid; m.p. $232-233{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, methanol- $\left.d_{4}\right) \delta 7.82(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.47-7.41(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.32(\mathrm{t}, J=7.7$
$\mathrm{Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}$ ), 1.88 (s, 6H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz , methanol- $d_{4}$ ) $\delta 170.9,142.5,137.8,134.5,131.5,128.8,127.9,20.2$;
IR (neat) $3008,2662,2554,1694,1300,1276,1184,1157,937,909,759 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{14} \mathrm{O}_{4}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 270.0892$, found. 270.0892.


Methyl 3-bromobenzofuran-2-carboxylate (S2)
A solution of 3-bromobenzofuran-2-carboxylic $\operatorname{acid}^{8}(1.03 \mathrm{~g}, 4.27 \mathrm{mmol})$ and a few drops of conc. $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ in $\mathrm{MeOH}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 71 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt, the mixture was added sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}$ and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by short column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $\left.: \mathrm{AcOEt}=9: 1\right)$ to afford $\mathbf{S 2}$ (1.08 g, 99\%).

White solid; m.p. $49-50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 7.69-7.61(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.52-7.48(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.44-7.34(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 4.02$ (s, 3H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 159.4,154.1,141.4,129.1,128.2,124.5,121.9,112.6,106.4,52.7$;
IR (neat) $1719,1549,1436,1326,1298,1157,1143,1024,841,741 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{z}$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{10} \mathrm{H}_{7} \mathrm{BrO}_{3}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$253.9579, found. 253.9580.


14m
Dimethyl [3,3'-bibenzofuran]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (14m)
A solution of $\mathbf{S 2}$ ( $4.28 \mathrm{~g}, 16.8 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and activated $\mathbf{C u}(8.53 \mathrm{~g}, 134 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) in DMF ( 15 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 27 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt ., the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 4 m}(1.99 \mathrm{~g}, 68 \%)$.

Yellow solid; m.p. $187-188^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 7.75-7.68(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.55-7.46(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.43-7.38(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.33-$ 7.21 (m, 2H), 3.79 ( $\mathrm{s}, 6 \mathrm{H}$ );
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR $\left(75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 159.9,154.8,142.1,128.3,127.7,124.1,122.3,118.3,112.7,52.4 ;$
IR (neat) $1720,1556,1438,1296,1152,1138,970,840,757,741 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{z}$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{20} \mathrm{H}_{14} \mathrm{O}_{6}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 350.0790$, found. 350.0789.

$6 m$
[3,3'-Bibenzofuran]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid (6m)
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 m}(413 \mathrm{mg}, 1.18 \mathrm{mmol})$ in THF/MeOH ( $2: 1,15 \mathrm{~mL}$ ), 2 N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at rt . for 67 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 N$ aq. HCl , and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6 m}$ ( 368 $\mathrm{mg}, 97 \%$ ). This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $245-246^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, methanol- $\left.d_{4}\right) \delta 7.70(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.58-7.51(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.40(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.0$ $\mathrm{Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.35-7.23$ (m, 2H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 75 MHz , methanol- $d_{4}$ ) $\delta 162.4,156.1,144.1,129.2,129.1,125.0,123.1,119.3,113.2$, IR (neat) $2848,1682,1565,1450,1288,1171,1144,950,840,739 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{10} \mathrm{O}_{6}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$322.0477, found. 322.0476.


140
Diethyl [3,3'-bibenzo[b]selenophene]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (140)
A solution of ethyl 3-bromobenzo[b]selenophene-2-carboxylate ${ }^{9}(1.50 \mathrm{~g}, 4.52 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and Cu powder ( $2.30 \mathrm{~g}, 36.1 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0$ equiv.) in DMF ( 10 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 34.5 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt ., the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered
and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=9: 1\right)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 4 o}(956 \mathrm{mg}, 84 \%)$.

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $158-159^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 7.96(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.37-7.43(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.24-7.29(\mathrm{~m}, 4 \mathrm{H})$, $4.03(\mathrm{q}, J=7.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 4 \mathrm{H}), 0.90(\mathrm{t}, J=7.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 6 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR (125 MHz, $\left.\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 163.5,142.2,141.9,141.2,133.5,127.3,126.8,125.8,125.2$, 61.4, 13.7;

IR (neat) 1707, 1681, 1279, 1233, 1100, 1071, 1041, 1017, 757, $732 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{22} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{O}_{4} \mathrm{Se}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 505.9535$, found. 505.9535.

[3,3'-Bibenzo[b]selenophene]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid (60)
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 0}(600 \mathrm{mg}, 1.19 \mathrm{mmol})$ in THF/MeOH ( $2: 1,30 \mathrm{~mL}$ ), 2 N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at rt . for 19 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 N$ aq. HCl , and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6 o}$ ( 477 mg , $90 \%$ ). This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $274-275^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, acetone- $\left.d_{6}\right) \delta 11.34(\mathrm{~s}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.17(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.52-7.42(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$, 7.37-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.21 (dd, $J=8.1,1.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}$ );
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( 125 MHz , acetone- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta$ 164.4, 143.2, 142.8, 142.1, 134.5, 128.1, 127.2, 126.9, 126.1;
IR (neat) $1715,1661,1513,1292,1246,1174,756,748,733,722 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{10} \mathrm{O}_{4} \mathrm{Se}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 449.8909$, found. 449.8909.


14p
Dimethyl [3,3'-bithiophene]-2,2'-dicarboxylate (14p)
A solution of methyl 3-bromothiophene-2-carboxylate ( $4.05 \mathrm{~g}, 18.3 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and activated $\mathrm{Cu}\left(9.31 \mathrm{~g}, 147 \mathrm{mmol}, 8.0\right.$ equiv.) in DMF ( 10 mL ) was refluxed under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere for 63 h . After the reaction was cooled to rt., the mixture was added $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and extracted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1$ to $3: 1)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 4 p}(1.71 \mathrm{~g}, 66 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. $194-195^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 7.51(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.05(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.74(\mathrm{~s}, 6 \mathrm{H}) ;$
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR $\left(75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 162.3,141.8,131.2,129.7,128.8,52.1 ;$
IR (neat) 1702, 1433, 1283, 1237, 1097, 1072, 864, 782, 767, $671 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{12} \mathrm{H}_{10} \mathrm{O}_{4} \mathrm{~S}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$282.0021, found. 282.0022.

$6 p$
[3,3'-Bithiophene]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid ( $\mathbf{6 p}$ )
To a solution of $\mathbf{1 4 p}(382 \mathrm{mg}, 1.35 \mathrm{mmol})$ in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH}(2: 1,15 \mathrm{~mL}), 2 N \mathrm{aq} . \mathrm{NaOH}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred at rt . for 16 h , the reaction mixture was washed with CPME. The aqueous layer was acidified with $2 N$ aq. HCl , and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give $\mathbf{6 p}$ ( 335 mg , $97 \%$ ). This dicarboxylic acid was used for one-pot cyclization reaction without further purification.

White amorphous;
${ }^{1} H$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, methanol- $\left.d_{4}\right) \delta 7.63(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.04(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 75 MHz , methanol- $d_{4}$ ) $\delta$ 165.1, 143.1, 132.3, 131.1, 130.8;
IR (neat) 2521, 1651, 1423, 1302, 1265, 867, 768, 731, 665, $514 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;

HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{10} \mathrm{H}_{6} \mathrm{O}_{4} \mathrm{~S}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$253.9708, found. 253.9711 .

## Substrate Scope for One-pot Cyclization

Scheme S3-4. Substrate scope for one-pot cyclization.


3,8-Dinitrophenanthridin-6(5H)-one (1e)
To a solution of $6 \mathbf{e}^{10}(101 \mathrm{mg}, 305 \mu \mathrm{~mol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 10 mL ), DPPA ( $130 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 605$ $\mu \mathrm{mol}, 1.98$ equiv.) and DIPEA ( $320 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.84 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.03$ equiv.) were added at rt. After being refluxed for 12 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 \mathrm{~N}$ aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(2: 1: 1,8 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=5: 1$ to $2: 1$ to $1: 1$ to $1: 2$ to $1: 5$ ), and then washed with $n$-hexane for 3 times to obtain $1 \mathbf{e}(50.5 \mathrm{mg}, 58 \%)$.

Yellow solid; m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 300 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 12.28(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.97-8.71(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.71-8.50(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.11(\mathrm{~d}$, $J=2.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.01-7.97$ (m, 1H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 75 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 159.5,148.4,147.5,137.9,137.6,127.2,126.9,126.4,126.2$, 122.7, 121.3, 116.7, 111.4;

IR (neat) $3371,3084,2960,2877,1679,1615,1519,1348,846,735,452 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{13} \mathrm{H}_{8} \mathrm{~N}_{3} \mathrm{O}_{5}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 286.0458$, found. 286.0456.

$1 f$
3,8-Difluorophenanthridin-6(5H)-one (1f)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 f}(278 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 N \mathrm{aq}$. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ to obtain $\mathbf{1 f}(175 \mathrm{mg}, 76 \%)$.

White amorphous;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{DMSO}-d_{6}\right) \delta 11.90(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.52(\mathrm{dd}, J=9.0,5.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.34-8.46(\mathrm{~m}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.92(\mathrm{dd}, J=9.3,2.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.72(\mathrm{td}, J=8.7,2.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.04-7.16(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 102.1(\mathrm{~d}, J=25 \mathrm{~Hz}), 110.1(\mathrm{~d}, J=23 \mathrm{~Hz}), 112.5(\mathrm{~d}, J=21$ $\mathrm{Hz}), 114.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 162.3(\mathrm{~d}, J=244 \mathrm{~Hz}), 161.4(\mathrm{~d}, J=245 \mathrm{~Hz}), 160.1(\mathrm{~d}, J=3.8 \mathrm{~Hz})$, $137.6(\mathrm{~d}, J=11 \mathrm{~Hz}), 130.6(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 126.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 125.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.3 \mathrm{~Hz}), 125.8(\mathrm{~d}$, $J=3.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 121.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=24 \mathrm{~Hz})$;
IR (neat) 2969, 2885, 1690, 1670, 1627, 1487, 1260, 1169, 870, 795, 524, $468 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{13} \mathrm{H}_{7} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{NO}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$231.0496, found 231.0496.


1g
3,8-Dimethoxyphenanthridin-6(5H)-one ( $\mathbf{1 g}$ )

To a solution of $\mathbf{6 g}$ ( $52.3 \mathrm{mg}, 0.173 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 8 mL ), DPPA ( $76 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.346$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $185 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.04 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 12 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 \mathrm{~N}$ aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(2: 1: 1,8 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=1: 1\right)$ to afford $\mathbf{1 g}(33 \mathrm{mg}$, 75\%).

White amorphous;
${ }^{1}$ H NMR ( 500 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 11.60(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.32(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.20(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.8 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.70(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.40(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.9,2.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.90-6.78(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.89(\mathrm{~s}, 3 \mathrm{H})$, 3.81 (s, 3H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 75 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta$ 160.9, 159.5, 158.2, 136.9, 128.1, 125.7, 124.1, 124.0, 121.8, 111.3, 110.1, 108.5, 99.5, 55.4, 55.3;

IR (neat) 2835, 1658, 1612, 1485, 1365, 1265, 1196, 1169, 1045, 799, $777 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{15} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{NO}_{3}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 255.0895$, found. 255.0895.


1h
2,9-Dinitrophenanthridin-6(5H)-one ( $\mathbf{1 h}$ )
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 h}(332 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.00 \mathrm{~mL}, 5.74 \mathrm{mmol}, 5.75$ equiv.) were added at rt. After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 N \mathrm{aq} . \mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 5 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3} / n$-hexane ( $1: 1$ ) to obtain $\mathbf{1 h}(188 \mathrm{mg}, 66 \%)$.

Yellow solid; m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 300 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 12.43(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 9.48-9.11(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.61-8.20(\mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 7.43$ (d, $J=8.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 75 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 160.0,150.8,142.6,142.0,134.4,134.4,130.0,125.8,123.2$, 120.8, 119.3, 117.5, 116.9;

IR (neat) $3100,2889,2857,1666,1615,1531,1335,1148,846,786,559 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{13} \mathrm{H}_{8} \mathrm{~N}_{3} \mathrm{O}_{5}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 286.0458$, found. 286.0458.


2,9-Difluorophenanthridin-6(5H)-one (1i)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 i}$ ( $278 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in THF/MeOH/2N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ to obtain $\mathbf{1 i}$ ( $168 \mathrm{mg}, 73 \%$ ).

White amorphous;
${ }^{1}$ H NMR ( 300 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 11.75(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.29-8.41(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.25(\mathrm{dd}, J=10.4,2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.49$ (td, $J=8.6,2.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.30-7.44$ (m, 2H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 165.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=249 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), $159.9,157.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=236 \mathrm{~Hz}), 136.4$ (dd, $J=10,2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 133.6 (d, $J=1.3 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 130.9 (d, $J=10 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 122.7 (d, $J=1.3 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 118.2 (dd, $J=8.1,2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 118.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=18 \mathrm{~Hz}), 117.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 116.6(\mathrm{~d}, J=24 \mathrm{~Hz}), 109.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=$ 24 Hz ), 109.3 (d, $J=24 \mathrm{~Hz}$ );
IR (neat) 3428, 3175, 3143, 3040, 2997, 2861, 1686, 1610, 1507, 1443, 1367, 1208, 866, 818, $671,587 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;

HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{13} \mathrm{H}_{7} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{NO}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$231.0496, found. 231.0497.


1 j
2,9-Dimethylphenanthridin-6(5H)-one (1j)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 j}$ ( $270 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ $\mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 N \mathrm{aq}$. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=7: 3$ to $\left.1: 1\right)$, and then washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3} / n$-hexane $(1: 2)$ to obtain $\mathbf{1} \mathbf{j}(93 \mathrm{mg}, 41 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. $269-270^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 300 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 11.50(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.30(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.23-8.13(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.49-7.38(\mathrm{~m}$, 1H), 7.33-7.25 (m, 2H), 2.52 (s, 3H), 2.41 (s, 3H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 75 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta$ 160.7, 142.9, 134.6, 134.2, 131.1, 130.5, 129.0, 127.5, 123.5, 123.0, 122.5, 117.4, 116.0, 21.5, 20.7;

IR (neat) 2856, 1658, 1613, 1364, 827, 778, 687, 659, 624, 530, $445 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{15} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{NO}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 223.0997$, found. 223.0998.


1k
1,10-Difluorophenanthridin-6(5H)-one ( $\mathbf{1 k}$ )
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 k}$ ( $278 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in THF/MeOH/2N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed
with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=7: 3$ to AcOEt only), and then washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3} / n$-hexane ( $1: 1$ ) to obtain $\mathbf{1 k}(113 \mathrm{mg}, 49 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. > $300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 500 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 11.96(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.25-8.21(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.77-7.71(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.58-$ 7.53 (m, 1H), 7.24 (dd, $J=8.2,1.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.12-7.08(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 159.6$ (d, $J=1.9 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 158.6 (d, $J=251.2 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 157.7 (d, $J=$ $253.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 138.6(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.3 \mathrm{~Hz}), 131.1(\mathrm{~d}, J=11.3 \mathrm{~Hz}), 129.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=10.0 \mathrm{~Hz}), 128.7,123.6$, $120.6(\mathrm{dd}, J=17.8,7.7 \mathrm{~Hz}), 118.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=12.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 111.9,109.7(\mathrm{dd}, J=16.4,9.0 \mathrm{~Hz}), 103.2(\mathrm{~d}$, $J=15.0 \mathrm{~Hz}$ );

IR (neat) $3044,3008,2873,1683,1618,1559,1380,1268,791,731,516,492 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (APCI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{13} \mathrm{H}_{8} \mathrm{~F}_{2} \mathrm{NO}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 232.0568$, found. 232.0570.


15
1,11-Dimethyl-5,7-dihydro-6 H -dibenzo[ $\left.\mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{f}\right][1,3]$ diazepin-6-one (15)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 l}(270 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 \mathrm{~N} \mathrm{aq}$. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=7: 3$ to AcOEt only $)$, and then washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3} / n$-hexane (1:1) to obtaine the urea $\mathbf{1 5}(76 \mathrm{mg}, 32 \%)$.

White amorphous;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 500 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 8.58(\mathrm{~s}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.19(\mathrm{t}, J=7.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.06-7.00(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.95-$ 6.87 (m, 2H), 2.07 (s, 6H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 165.9,143.0,137.5,128.7,128.0,125.9,118.8,20.0$;
IR (neat) 3240, 3143, 3025, 2925, 1929, 1690, 1567, 1427, 1380, 874, 798, $687 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (APCI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{15} \mathrm{H}_{15} \mathrm{~N}_{2} \mathrm{O}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+}$239.1179, found. 239.1181.


1 m
Bis(benzofuro)[2,3-b:3', $\left.2^{\prime}-d\right]$ pyridin-7(6H)-one (1m)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 m}(58 \mathrm{mg}, 0.18 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 5 mL ), DPPA ( $77 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.36 \mathrm{mmol}$, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $188 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.08 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 12 h under Argon atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in THF/MeOH/2N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(2: 1: 1,16 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with water and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=1: 1$ and then $\left.\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}\right)$ and then washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3} / n$-hexane (1:1) to obtaine $\mathbf{1 m}(33 \mathrm{mg}, 67 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{DMSO}-d_{6}\right) \delta 8.62(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.41(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.93(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.3 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, $7.80-7.72(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.65-7.57(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.53-7.46(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 150 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 156.6,152.9,151.9,130.0,130.0,124.2,124.2,124.1,124.0$, $123.8,122.9,122.2,121.6,121.5,112.9,111.7$ (One carbon signal was overlapped.);

IR (neat) 3435, 3029, 2590, 1655, 1599, 1451, 1180, 1053, 750, $499 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{10} \mathrm{NO}_{3}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+}$276.0655, found. 276.0654.


1n
Benzo[4,5]thieno[2,3-b]benzo[4,5]thieno[3,2-d]pyridin-7(6H)-one (1n)
To a solution of [3,3'-bibenzo[b]thiophene]-2, ${ }^{\prime}$-dicarboxylic acid ${ }^{11}$ ( $354 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.00$ mmol, 6.0 equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in

THF/MeOH/2N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL}$ ) was stirred at rt. for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ to obtain 1n ( $158 \mathrm{mg}, 52 \%$ ).

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 500 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 13.21(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.78-8.91(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.58(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, $8.30-8.19(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.08(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.81-7.56(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.57(\mathrm{t}, J=7.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.43(\mathrm{t}$, $J=7.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 75 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta$ 158.1, 141.5, 137.2, 134.5, 133.3, 133.2, 128.0, 126.3, 125.2, 125.0, 124.3, 124.2, 123.5, 123.0 (Three carbon signals were overlapped);

IR (neat) 2657, 1635, 1453, 1120, 903, 748, 718, 615, 575, $410 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 307.0126$, found. 307.0125 .


10
Benzo[4,5]selenopheno[2,3-b]benzo[4,5]selenopheno[3,2- $d$ ] pyridin-7(6H)-one (10)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 0}(448 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in THF/MeOH/2N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,30 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=7: 3$ to $3: 2$ ), and then washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ to obtain $\mathbf{1 0}(237 \mathrm{mg}, 59 \%)$.

Yellow solid; m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1}{ }^{1} \mathrm{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, DMSO- $\left.d_{6}\right) \delta 12.90(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.79-8.62(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.36(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, $8.31-8.19(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.13(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.71-7.58(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.48(\mathrm{t}, J=7.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.32(\mathrm{t}$, $J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 125 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 159.2,142.6,140.9,137.2,135.5,135.0,127.9,127.8,127.5$, 126.7, 124.8, 124.6, 124.3 (Three carbon signals were overlapped.);

IR (neat) 3431, 2833, 1651, 1523, 1443, 1113, 750, 711, 603, 535, $428 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{z}$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 402.9014$, found. 402.9019 .


1p
Dithieno[2,3-b:3', $\left.2^{\prime}-d\right]$ pyridin-5(4H)-one (1p)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 p}(254 \mathrm{mg}, 1.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene $(20 \mathrm{~mL})$, DPPA $(430 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.00$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.05 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.00 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 N \mathrm{aq}$. $\mathrm{NaOH}(1: 1: 1,60 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $: \mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 2$ to $\left.1: 1\right)$, and then washed with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3} / n$-hexane (1:9) to obtain $\mathbf{1 p}(114 \mathrm{mg}, 55 \%)$.

Pale yellow amorphous;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{DMSO}-d_{6}\right) \delta 12.58(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.15(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.78(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.1 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.56(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.28(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( 75 MHz , DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta$ 157.9, 142.3, 141.3, 134.7, 126.8, 123.4, 121.0, 117.4, 117.4;
IR (neat) 2781, 1621, 1180, 1112, 883, 845, 714, 643, 580, $453 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{9} \mathrm{H}_{5} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$206.9813, found. 206.9815 .

Scheme S3-5. Syntheses of $O$-phosphated helicenes.

$X=O, S, S e$



7b
Phosphate sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule (7b)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 b}$ ( $114 \mathrm{mg}, 0.25 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 10 mL ), DPPA ( $108 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.5$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(192 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.5 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 4 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was quenched with 2 N aq. HCl and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1$ to $3: 1$ ) to afford $7 \mathrm{bb}(24 \mathrm{mg}, 15 \%)$.

Yellow solid; m.p. $126-127^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 8.07$ (d, $J=8.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}$ ), $8.05-8.00(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.98(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.6 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.90-7.81$ (m, 2H), 7.56-7.49 (m, 4H), 7.47-7.40 (m, 4H), 7.33-7.27 (m, 2H), 7.25-7.22 $(\mathrm{m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.21-7.19(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.18-7.11(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.49-6.44(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.42-6.31(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $150 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 155.2,150.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.4 \mathrm{~Hz}), 149.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.7 \mathrm{~Hz}), 141.2,140.2$, $136.0,130.9,130.8$ (d, $J=4.8 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 130.6, 130.5 (d, $J=6.4 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 130.0, 129.0, 128.1 (d, $J=16.6$ $\mathrm{Hz}), 127.9,127.0,126.6,125.9,125.6,125.1,124.8,124.2,122.5,121.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.4 \mathrm{~Hz}), 120.8(\mathrm{~d}$, $J=4.9 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 120.5 (d, $J=11.1 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ) (Four carbon signals were overlapped.);

IR (neat) 3057, 2969, 2328, 2164, 1487, 1308, 1184, 1073, 961, 942, 802, 679, $516 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{z}$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{37} \mathrm{H}_{22} \mathrm{NO}_{4} \mathrm{PS}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 639.0728$, found. 639.0741.

$7 m$
Bis(benzofuro)[2,3-b:3', $\left.2^{\prime}-d\right]$ pyridin-7-yl diphenyl phosphate (7m)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 m}$ ( $100 \mathrm{mg}, 0.31 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 20 mL ), DPPA ( $133 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.62$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $324 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.86 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was quenched with $2 N \mathrm{aq} . \mathrm{HCl}$ and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1$ to $3: 1$ ) to afford $7 \mathrm{~m}(109 \mathrm{mg}, 69 \%)$.

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $163-164{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 8.37(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.24(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.73-7.63(\mathrm{~m}$, $3 \mathrm{H}), 7.59-7.50(\mathrm{~m}, 11 \mathrm{H}), 7.30-7.17$ (m, 2H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR $\left(75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 157.8,155.4(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 155.1,150.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 139.3$ $(\mathrm{d}, J=6.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 138.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 130.7,130.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 127.9,125.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.5 \mathrm{~Hz})$, $124.1(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 123.8,122.6,122.3(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.3 \mathrm{~Hz}), 120.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.3 \mathrm{~Hz}), 113.1,112.5$, 130.3, 108.6 (Two carbon signals were overlapped.);
${ }^{31} \mathbf{P}$ NMR (200 MHz, $\left.\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta-18.3$;
IR (neat) 1640, 1597, 1485, 1450, 1395, 1310, 1184, 1048, 939, 741, $519 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{NO}_{6} \mathrm{P}(\mathrm{M})^{+}$507.0872, found. 507.0873.


Benzo[4,5]thieno[2,3-b]benzo[4,5]thieno[3,2-d]pyridin-7-yl diphenyl phosphate (7n)
To a solution of [3,3'-bibenzo[b]thiophene]-2,2'-dicarboxylic acid $^{x}$ ( $400 \mathrm{mg}, 1.13 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 40 mL ), DPPA ( $485 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.26 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.17 \mathrm{~mL}, 6.77$ mmol, 6.0 equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 16.5 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was quenched with $2 N$ aq. HCl and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $: \mathrm{AcOEt}=9: 1$ to $\left.4: 1\right)$ to afford 7n ( $235 \mathrm{mg}, 39 \%$ ).

Purified 7n was recrystallized from AcOEt to give white solid.

White solid; m.p. $155-156^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
The chemical shifts of the ${ }^{1} \mathrm{H}$ NMR signals were found to depend on the concentration as follows: ${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}, 0.005 \mathrm{M}\right) \delta 9.09(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.91(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.05-$ $7.95(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.71-7.52(\mathrm{~m}, 4 \mathrm{H}), 7.47-7.40(\mathrm{~m}, 7 \mathrm{H}), 7.30-7.21(\mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}, 0.1 \mathrm{M}\right) \delta 8.94(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.75-8.80(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.85-7.95(\mathrm{~m}$, $2 \mathrm{H}), 7.55-7.60(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.38-7.54(\mathrm{~m}, 11 \mathrm{H}), 7.23-7.29(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}, 0.1 \mathrm{M}$ ) $\delta 155.4,150.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 150.3(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 141.7$, $141.2,138.0,134.0,132.5,130.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 129.0,126.6,126.2,125.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 124.9$, $124.6,124.4,123.7,123.4,123.1,121.6(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.0 \mathrm{~Hz}), 120.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=4.5 \mathrm{~Hz})$;
${ }^{31} \mathbf{P}$ NMR ( $200 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta-18.7$;
IR (neat) $1588,1525,1487,1342,1300,1181,1161,936,751,687 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{NO}_{4} \mathrm{PS}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 539.0415$, found. 539.0411.

Crystallographic data for the single crystal of racemic 1n obtained by recrystallization from $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ and $n$-hexane: $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{NO}_{18} \mathrm{PS}_{2}, \mathrm{M}=539.53$, monoclinic, $P 2_{1}, a=7.58210(10), b=$ 30.1544(7) $\AA, c=10.5015(2) \AA, \alpha=90^{\circ}, \beta=95.411(2)^{\circ}, \gamma=90^{\circ}, V=2399.65(8) \AA^{3}, Z=4, \rho_{\text {calcd }}$ $=1.493 \mathrm{gcm}^{-3}, T=103 \mathrm{~K}, 43732$ reflections measured, 4708 unique. The final $R_{1}$ and $w R$ were 0.0626 and 0.1297 (all data).


Benzo[4,5]selenopheno[2,3-b]benzo[4,5]selenopheno[3,2-d]pyridin-7-yl diphenyl phosphate (7o) To a solution of $\mathbf{6 0}(428 \mathrm{mg}, 0.96 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 60 mL ), DPPA ( $411 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.91$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $998 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 5.73 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 18 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was quenched with 2 N aq. HCl and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1$ to $\left.7: 3\right)$ to afford $7 \mathrm{o}(286 \mathrm{mg}, 47 \%)$.

Purified 7 o was recrystallized from $\mathrm{AcOEt} / n$-hexane to give pale yellow solid.

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $149-150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
The chemical shifts of the ${ }^{1} \mathrm{H}$ NMR signals were found to depend on the concentration as follows
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}, 0.005 \mathrm{M}\right) \delta 8.98(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.78(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.94-$ $8.05(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.37-7.60(\mathrm{~m}, 11 \mathrm{H}), 7.21-7.31(\mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(500 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}, 0.1 \mathrm{M}\right) \delta 8.89(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.70(\mathrm{dd}, J=7.1,2.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, 7.87-7.98 (m, 2H), 7.34-7.52 (m, 12H), 7.19-7.30 (m, 2H);
${ }^{13}$ C NMR $\left(75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}, 0.1 \mathrm{M}\right) \delta 157.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 151.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 150.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=$ $7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 145.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.6 \mathrm{~Hz}), 142.0,139.0,136.5,134.9,130.0(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 129.1,127.7$, $127.6,126.9,126.8,126.7,126.4,125.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 124.4,124.3,121.7(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.3 \mathrm{~Hz}), 120.7$ (d, $J=4.5 \mathrm{~Hz}$ );
${ }^{31} \mathbf{P}$ NMR ( $200 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta-18.7$;
IR (neat) $1487,1341,1300,1276,1177,962,930,755,687,522 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;

HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{NaNO}_{4} \mathrm{PSe}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{Na})^{+} 657.9202$, found. 657.9217.

Crystallographic data for the single crystal of racemic 70 obtained by recrystallization from $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}$ and $n$-hexane: $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{NO}_{18} \mathrm{PSe}_{2}, \mathrm{M}=633.33$, monoclinic, $P 2_{1} / \mathrm{n}, a=8.34950(10) \AA, b=$ 18.8577(2) $\AA, c=15.9730(2) \AA, \alpha=90^{\circ}, \beta=103.7580(10)^{\circ}, \gamma=90^{\circ}, V=2442.83(5) \AA^{3}, Z=4$, $\rho_{\text {calcd }}=1.722 \mathrm{gcm}^{-3}, T=103 \mathrm{~K}, 44328$ reflections measured, 4794 unique. The final $R_{1}$ and $w R$ were 0.0568 and 0.1351 (all data).


7p
Dithieno[2,3-b:3', $\left.2^{\prime}-d\right]$ pyridin- 5 -yl diphenyl phosphate (7p)
To a solution of $\mathbf{6 p}(300 \mathrm{mg}, 1.18 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 25 mL ), DPPA ( $507 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 2.36$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $1.23 \mathrm{~mL}, 7.08 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 15 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was quenched with 2 Naq . HCl and extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 2$ ) to afford $\mathbf{7 p}(306 \mathrm{mg}, 59 \%)$.

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $138-139^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $300 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 7.78(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.3 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.64-7.66(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.55(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.9 \mathrm{~Hz}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.51(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.34-7.46(\mathrm{~m}, 8 \mathrm{H}), 7.20-7.28(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $75 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 153.4(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 150.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 149.2(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.8 \mathrm{~Hz})$, $143.8(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 133.2,129.9(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 126.3,125.81(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.5 \mathrm{~Hz}), 125.76,122.1$, 121.8 (d, $J=9.8 \mathrm{~Hz}), 120.7$ (d, $J=5.3 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ), 119.4;
${ }^{31} \mathbf{P}$ NMR ( $200 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta-18.7$;
IR (neat) $1584,1481,1311,1179,1154,1065,942,737,687,507 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (EI) $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{z}$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{21} \mathrm{H}_{14} \mathrm{NO}_{4} \mathrm{PS}_{2}(\mathrm{M})^{+} 439.0102$, found. 439.0099.

## Synthesis of Amide-functionalized [7]Helicene-like Molecules 1a and 1b via Direct One-pot Cyclization Method.

Scheme S3-6. Synthesis of 1a via direct one-pot cyclization


Amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule ( $d l$ )-1a
To a solution of $(d l) \mathbf{- 6 a}(10 \mathrm{mg}, 0.023 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 2 mL ), DPPA ( $10 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.046$ mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and DIPEA ( $24 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.14 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt. After being refluxed for 12 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. Then, a solution of the residue in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 N \mathrm{aq}$. $\mathrm{NaOH}(2: 1: 1,4 \mathrm{~mL}$ ) was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt . The organic layer was washed with $1 N$ aq. HCl , sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n-\right.$ hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1)$ to afford $(d l) \mathbf{- 1 a}(3.8 \mathrm{mg}, 42 \%)$.


(M)-1a

(P)-1a
$(M)$ - and $(P)$-1a were prepared by direct one-pot cyclization from dicarboxylic acid $(R)$ - and $(S)$ 6a in $37 \%$ and $38 \%$, respectively, according to the same procedure as racemic form.
$(M)-\mathbf{1 a},>99 \%$ ee, $37 \%$ yield, m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C} ;(P)-\mathbf{1 a},>98 \%$ ee, $38 \%$ yield, m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
The physical data is consistent with the data reported in Chapter 2.

Scheme S3-7. Synthesis of ( $d l$ )-1b via direct one-pot cyclization

(dl)-6b

Sulfur containing amide functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule ( $d l$ )-1b
To a solution of $(d l)-\mathbf{6 b}(64.7 \mathrm{mg}, 0.143 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in toluene ( 5 mL ), DPPA ( $61 \mu \mathrm{~L}$, $0.285 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(119 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.855 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.0$ equiv.) were added at rt . After being refluxed for 12 h under $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atmosphere, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give a
residue. Then, a solution of the residue in THF/MeOH/2N aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(2: 1: 1,8 \mathrm{~mL})$ was stirred at rt . for 12 h , and the reaction mixture was extracted with AcOEt. The organic layer was washed with $1 N$ aq. HCl , sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}$ and brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n-\right.$ hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1$ to $1: 1)$ to afford $(d l)-\mathbf{1 b}(14.6 \mathrm{mg}, 25 \%)$.

Yellow solid; m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{DMSO}-d_{6}\right) \delta 8.29(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.19-8.10(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.05-7.97(\mathrm{~m}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.95-7.91(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.41-7.32(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.30-7.21(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.17-7.11(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.55-6.45$ (m, 1H), 6.42-6.31 (m, 1H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( 100 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 158.0,140.9,137.1,131.0,130.8,130.6,130.1,130.0,129.6$, $128.9,127.9,127.8,126.0,125.7,125.5,125.4,125.0,124.3,123.4,121.2,120.7$. (Four carbon signals were overlapped);
IR (neat) $3048,2924,1647,1515,1440,1360,1225,1137,608 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{14} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 408.0511$, found. 408.0510 .

(M)-1 $\mathbf{b}$

(P)-1b
$(M)$ - and $(P)$-1b were prepared by direct one-pot cyclization from dicarboxylic acid $(R)$ - and $(S)$ $\mathbf{6 b}$ in $26 \%$ and $24 \%$, respectively, according to the same procedure as racemic form.
$(M)-1 b,>99 \%$ ee, $26 \%$ yield, m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C},[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{19}=-1869.5(\mathrm{c}=0.5, \mathrm{DMSO}) ; \mathrm{CD} \lambda_{\text {ext }}$ (THF) $\mathrm{nm}(\Delta \varepsilon): 333(-50.16), 330(93.66), 264(-182.89), 234$ (217.18). UV $\lambda_{\max }(\mathrm{THF}) \mathrm{nm}(\log \varepsilon): 318$ (4.25), 230sh (4.97).
(P)-1b, $>99 \%$ ee, $24 \%$ yield, m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C},[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{22}=+1874.6\left(\mathrm{c}=0.04\right.$, THF); CD $\lambda_{\text {ext }}(\mathrm{THF}) \mathrm{nm}$ ( $\Delta \varepsilon$ ): 333 (52.04), 330 (93.66), 264 (187.93) 234 (-236.91).

Scheme S3-8. Hydrolysis of 7b


The solution of $(d l)-7 \mathbf{b}(24 \mathrm{mg}, 37.5 \mu \mathrm{~mol})$ in $\mathrm{THF} / \mathrm{MeOH} / 2 N$ aq. $\mathrm{NaOH}(2: 1: 1,4 \mathrm{~mL})$ was allowed to be stirred at rt . for 12 h . And the reaction mixture was extracted with $\operatorname{AcOEt}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times$ 3). The organic layers were combined and washed with $1 \mathrm{Naq} . \mathrm{HCl}$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}$ and brine,
dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $: \mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1$ to $\left.1: 1\right)$ to afford $(d l)-\mathbf{1 b}$ ( 15 mg , quant.).
The physical data of $(d l) \mathbf{- 1 b}$ was consistent with reported in Chapter 3.

## Chapter 4.

Scheme S4-1. Preparation for substrate 3


19
(S)- $N$-(1-hydroxy-3-methylbutan-2-yl)naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxamide (19)

To a mixture of $\mathbf{1 8}^{12}(2.77 \mathrm{~g}, 12.12 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\operatorname{HOBt}(2.0 \mathrm{~g}, 14.54 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 20 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $3.0 \mathrm{~g}, 14.54 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add L-valinol ( $1.5 \mathrm{~g}, 14.54 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(2.0 \mathrm{~mL}, 14.54 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt . for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with $\mathrm{AcOEt}(150 \mathrm{~mL})$. The filtrate was washed with $1 N \mathrm{aq} . \mathrm{HCl}$ ( $30 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3$ ), sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(30 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine ( 20 mL ). Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=1: 1\right)$ to obtain 19 ( $3.3 \mathrm{~g}, 86 \%$ ).

White solid; m.p. $152-153^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 8.41(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.29-8.24(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.98-7.87(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.84-7.73(\mathrm{~m}$, $2 \mathrm{H}), 7.61-7.57(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.55-7.51(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.47(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 4.11-3.94(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 3.89-$ $3.81(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 2.62(\mathrm{t}, J=5.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 2.09-2.06(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 1.08-1.06(\mathrm{~m}, 6 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $100 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 163.2,139.5,137.6,135.6,131.1,129.8,128.9,127.6,127.2$, 126.0, 123.5, 123.4, 120.6, 63.8, 57.8, 29.5, 19.8, 19.3;

IR (neat) $3295,3048,2937,1631,1543,1193,1073,802,746,683 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{20} \mathrm{NO}_{2} \mathrm{~S}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 314.1209$, found. 314.1208.

(S)-4-Isopropyl-2-(naphtho[2,1-b]thiophen-2-yl)-4,5-dihydrooxazole (20)

To a solution of 19 ( $3.3 \mathrm{~g}, 10.3 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in DCM ( 20 mL ), $\mathrm{SOCl}_{2}$ ( $3.7 \mathrm{~mL}, 51 \mathrm{mmol}$, 5.0 equiv.) was added dropwise at rt . After being stirred at rt . for 12 h , the reaction was quenched with sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(50 \mathrm{~mL})$ and then diluted with $\mathrm{CHCl}_{3}(30 \mathrm{~mL})$. After separation, the organic layer was washed with sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(10 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, water $(20 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$ and brine $(20 \mathrm{~mL})$. Organic phase was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, and filtered to collect the filtrate which was evaporated in vacuo to obtain the crude residue. Recrystallization in hot $n$-hexane of the residue gave pure product $\mathbf{2 0}$ ( $2.7 \mathrm{~g}, 89 \%$ )

White solid; m.p. 104-105 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 8.48(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.38(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.93(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, $7.88-7.83(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.81-7.73(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.68-7.61(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.58-7.47(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 4.51-4.36(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, $4.27-4.14(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 2.00-1.87(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 1.07(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 0.97(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $150 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta$ 159.6, 139.7, 135.8, 131.1, 130.0, 129.7, 128.8, 127.2, 127.1, $125.9,125.2,123.6,120.6,73.2,70.9,32.9,19.2,18.2$;
IR (neat) 3052, 2952, 2865, 1651, 1356, 1029, 954, 814, 742, $484 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{18} \mathrm{NOS}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+}$296.1104, found. 296.1105.


21
(S)-2-(1-Bromonaphtho[2,1-b]thiophen-2-yl)-4-isopropyl-4,5-dihydrooxazole (21)

To a solution of $\mathbf{2 0}(2.7 \mathrm{~g}, 9.2 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in dry ether ( 60 mL ), $n \mathrm{BuLi}(9.3 \mathrm{~mL}, 14.7 \mathrm{mmol}$, 1.6 equiv.) was added slowly at $-78^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under Argon atmosphere. The resulted mixture was stirred $-78^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 1 h . A solution of 1,2-dibromotetrachloroethane ( $4.8 \mathrm{~g}, 14.7 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.6$ equiv.) was added to the resulted mixture at $-78^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under Argon atmosphere. The resulted mixture was stirred for 6 h from $-78^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to rt., and evaporated in vacuo to remove the solvent. The residue was diluted with $\operatorname{AcOEt}(50 \mathrm{~mL})$ and washed with $1 \mathrm{Naq} . \mathrm{HCl}(20 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(20 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine $(20 \mathrm{~mL})$. Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to obtain $21(3.3 \mathrm{~g}, 95 \%)$.

Pale yellow solid; m.p. $87-88^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 9.86(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.94(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.1,1.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.81(\mathrm{~d}, J$ $=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.77(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.72-7.67(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.62-7.57(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 4.53-4.43(\mathrm{~m}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 4.29-4.14(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 2.03-1.88(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 1.09(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 0.99(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $150 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 158.7,138.7,132.3,131.4,130.1,129.2,128.6,126.8,126.1$, $125.6,122.9,120.2,110.3,73.0,70.5,32.9,19.0,18.2$;

IR (neat) 3060, 2965, 2885, 1638, 1499, 1208, 1045, 982, 810, $671 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{BrNOS}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 374.0209$, found. 374.0210.


22
1-Bromonaphtho [2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxylic acid (22)
The solution of $21(3.3 \mathrm{~g}, 8.74 \mathrm{mmol})$ in 150 mL mixed solvent $(6 \mathrm{~N}$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}: 1,4$-dioxane $=7$ : 3) was allowed to be stirred for 6 h under refluxing at Argon atmosphere. Then the suspension was cooled to rt. and filtered to collect the residue and the filtrate. The filtrate was washed with
water ( $30 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3$ ) and brine ( $20 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3$ ). Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}: \mathrm{AcOH}=90: 30: 1\right)$ to obtain 22. The solid was dried under reduced pressure at $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 12 hours. After combination, the total resulted compound 22 was obtained ( $2.6 \mathrm{~g}, 98 \%$ ).

White solid; m.p. $250-251^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( 600 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 9.79$ (d, $J=8.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}$ ), 8.15-8.05 (m, 2H), 8.05-7.99 (m, $1 \mathrm{H}), 7.78-7.71(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.69-7.58(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 100 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 162.3,139.1,131.9,130.5,129.5,129.4,129.2,127.0,126.3$, 122.0, 120.9, 111.8 (One carbon signal was overlapped.);

IR (neat) 2965, 2590, 1690, 1479, 1436, 1249, 890, 802, 679, $464 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{13} \mathrm{H}_{8} \mathrm{BrO}_{2} \mathrm{~S}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 306.9423$, found. 306.9425 .


3
1-Bromo- $N$-(4-methoxybenzyl)naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxamide (3)
To a mixture of 22 ( $2.6 \mathrm{~g}, 8.6 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\operatorname{HOBt}(1.4 \mathrm{~g}, 10.32 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 30 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $2.1 \mathrm{~g}, 10.32 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add 4 -methoxybenzylamine ( $1.5 \mathrm{~g}, 10.32 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(1.4 \mathrm{~mL}$, $10.32 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt . for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with $\operatorname{AcOEt}(100 \mathrm{~mL})$. The filtrate was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(30 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(30 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine ( 20 mL ). Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1$ to $2: 1$ ) to obtain $3(1.9 \mathrm{~g}, 4.5 \mathrm{mmol}, 52 \%)$.

White solid; m.p. $144-145^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 9.63(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.7,1.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.96(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.0,1.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.87$

- 7.76 (m, 2H), 7.70-7.62 (m, 1H), 7.61-7.55 (m, 1H), 7.52 (s, 1H), 7.41-7.32 (m, 2H), 6.96 $6.86(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 4.69(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.82(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $100 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 161.4,159.3,139.0,134.9,132.3,131.0,130.1,129.8,129.5$, $129.5,128.8,126.9,126.2,122.4,120.5,114.4,55.5,44.1$. (One carbon signal was overlapped.); IR (neat) 3303, 3064, 2889, 2833, 1619, 1543, 1511, 1300, 1244, 810, $503 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{21} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{BrNO}_{2} \mathrm{~S}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 426.0158$, found. 426.0157.

Scheme S4-2. Preparation of phenanthrene substrate 29




26
4-Bromo-1-methylphenanthrene-3-carbonitrile (26)
To a solution of $\mathrm{NaNO}_{2}\left(138 \mathrm{mg}, 2.0 \mathrm{mmol}, 2.2\right.$ equiv.) in conc. $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}(2 \mathrm{~mL})$ and $\mathrm{CH}_{3} \mathrm{COOH}$ $(2 \mathrm{~mL})$ at $40{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathbf{2 5}^{14}(216 \mathrm{mg}, 0.93 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) was added portionwise and slowly. The resulted mixture was allowed to be stirred at $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 1 h to obtain a brown solution. After cooling to rt., the brown solution was added dropwise to another solution of $\mathrm{CuBr}(430.5 \mathrm{mg}, 3.0$ mmol, 3.3 equiv.) in $30 \% \mathrm{HBr}(3 \mathrm{~mL})$ at ice bath. The finally resulted mixture was stirred for 20 min at ice bath. Then the mixture was poured into ice water and basified with 6 Naq . NaOH under stirring. The solution was then extracted by $\operatorname{AcOEt}(20 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3$ ). The organic layers were combined and washed with water ( 20 mL ) and brine ( 10 mL ). After being dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, the
organic phase was filtered to collect filtrate which was evaporated in vacuo to obtain crude residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=5: 1\right)$ to give 26 ( $85.5 \mathrm{mg}, 31 \%$ ).

Brown solid; m.p. $120-121^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 9.84-9.79(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.96-7.89(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.87(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, $7.74-7.66(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.62(\mathrm{q}, J=0.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 2.72(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR (150 MHz, $\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 136.0,135.6,133.3,131.4,130.7,129.9,129.6,128.7,128.2$, 127.6, 126.2, 122.1, 120.8, 119.2, 116.4, 20.3;

IR (neat) $3068,2984,2220,1503,1376,822,746,639,587,555 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (APCI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{11} \mathrm{BrN}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 296.0069$, found. 296.0068.


27

4-Bromo-1-methylphenanthrene-3-carbaldehyde (27)
To a solution of $26\left(85.5 \mathrm{mg}, 0.3 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0\right.$ equiv.) in toluene ( 8 mL ) at $-78{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under Argon atmosphere, DIBAL-H ( $435 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.435 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) was added. The resulted solution was stirred for 3 h at $-50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Then 2 N aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added at rt . After being stirred for 1 h , the mixture was extracted by $\mathrm{AcOEt}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$. Organic layers were combined and washed with water $(10 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$ and brine $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$. After being dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, the organic phase was filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=10: 1\right)$ to give $27(67 \mathrm{mg}, 75 \%)$

White solid; m.p. $122-123{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 10.75(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 9.76-9.65(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.95-7.92(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.92-7.89$ (m, 2H), $7.86(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.70-7.64(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 2.73(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $150 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 193.9,137.6,134.9,133.4,131.1,130.5,129.9,128.6,128.3$, $127.7,127.2,125.5,124.0,122.4,20.2$ (One carbon signal was overlapped.);

IR (neat) $2928,1679,1587,1372,1260,989,818,742,531,444 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (APCI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{12} \mathrm{BrO}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+}$299.0066, found. 299.0067.


28

4-Bromo-1-methylphenanthrene-3-carboxylic acid (28)
To a solution of $\mathrm{NaClO}_{2}(137.8 \mathrm{mg}, 1.5 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.8$ equiv.) in water $(1.5 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added dropwise to a stirred mixture of 27 ( $67 \mathrm{mg}, 0.224 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.), $\mathrm{NaH}_{2} \mathrm{PO}_{4}(32.3 \mathrm{mg}, 0.269 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.), $30 \% \mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{2}(112 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.12 \mathrm{mmol}, 5.0$ equiv.) in water $(0.5 \mathrm{~mL})$ and acetonitrile ( 1 mL ). The resulted mixture was stirred at $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 5 h . Then $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{3}(112.9 \mathrm{mg}, 0.896 \mathrm{mmol}, 6.8$ equiv.) was added to the system. The obtained solution was evaporated in vacuo to give a crude residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, \mathrm{CHCl}_{3}: \mathrm{MeOH}=10: 1\right)$ to give $\mathbf{2 8}$ ( $59 \mathrm{mg}, 84 \%$ )

White solid; m.p. 211-212 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}\right.$, acetone $\left.-d_{6}\right) \delta 9.82(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.07-8.02(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.02-7.96(\mathrm{~m}$, $2 \mathrm{H}), 7.78-7.70(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.63(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 2.77(\mathrm{~s}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 150 MHz , acetone- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 136.1,134.9,134.4,131.0,130.1,129.4,128.5,128.4,127.9$, 126.0, 123.2, 113.9, 20.0 (Three carbon signals were overlapped.);

IR (neat) 2969, 2614, 1694, 1419, 1272, 926, 818, 750, 635, $456 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI-) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{16} \mathrm{H}_{10} \mathrm{BrO}_{2}(\mathrm{M}-\mathrm{H})^{+} 312.9870$, found. 312.9872.


29
4-Bromo- $N$-(4-methoxybenzyl)-1-methylphenanthrene-3-carboxamide (29)
To a mixture of 28 ( $59 \mathrm{~g}, 0.188 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{HOBt}(30.5 \mathrm{mg}, 0.226 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 5 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $46.6 \mathrm{mg}, 0.226 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add 4-methoxybenzylamine ( $41.1 \mathrm{mg}, 0.24 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}$ ( $32 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.226 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt . for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with AcOEt $(10 \mathrm{~mL})$. The filtrate was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$. Organic layer was
dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$ hexane : AcOEt = $3: 1$ to $3: 2$ ) to obtain $29(41.5 \mathrm{mg}, 0.1 \mathrm{mmol}, 51 \%)$.

White amorphous;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 9.78(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.93-7.87(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.87-7.78(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$, $7.69-7.57(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.43(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.38(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.95-6.86(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.04(\mathrm{~s}$, $1 \mathrm{H}), 4.67(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.82(\mathrm{~s}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 2.70(\mathrm{~d}, J=0.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $100 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 169.5,159.3,139.7,135.2,134.0,133.4,130.3,129.8,129.7$, $129.5,129.1,128.4,127.9,127.5,126.8,125.2,122.3,114.3,113.6,55.5,44.9,20.2$;

IR (neat) $3267,3052,2925,1634,1511,1249,1034,810,750,576,444 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{24} \mathrm{H}_{21} \mathrm{BrNO}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 434.0750$, found. 434.0749.

Scheme S4-3. Palladium-catalyzed domino reaction with conditions developed by Furuta


The mixture of $\mathbf{3}$ ( $30 \mathrm{mg}, 0.07 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.), $\mathrm{Pd}_{2}(\mathrm{dba})_{3}\left(3.9 \mathrm{mg}, 4 \mu \mathrm{~mol}, 6 \mathrm{~mol} \%\right.$ ) and $\mathrm{K}_{2} \mathrm{CO}_{3}$ ( $11.1 \mathrm{mg}, 0.08 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.1$ equiv.) in DMF ( 2 mL ) was stirred at $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under Argon atmosphere. After cooling the reaction to $\mathrm{rt}, \mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added, and extracted with $\mathrm{AcOEt}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 2)$. The organic layers were combined and washed with $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$, brine, dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$, and evaporated in vacuo to give the residue. However, the target compound $\mathbf{8}$ couldn't been detected. $\mathbf{3}$ almost remained. After increase the temperature to $140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, the target compound $\mathbf{8}$ was still failed to be detected. But $\mathbf{3}$ disappeared.

Scheme S4-4. Conditions screening for palladium-catalyzed domino reaction


General procedure towards 8
$\mathrm{PdCl}_{2}(\mathrm{PhCN})_{2}(1.8 \mathrm{mg}, 0.0047 \mathrm{mmol}, 0.1$ equiv.), $3(20 \mathrm{mg}, 0.047 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.), CsF ( 28.6 $\mathrm{mg}, 0.188 \mathrm{mmol}, 4.0$ equiv.) were added in a reaction tube, and the mixture was dissolved in anhydrous DMA ( 2 mL ) under Argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was stirred at scheduled temperature for 24 h or 48 h , then $\mathrm{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added to dissolve the mixture as much as
possible (except for inorganic salts). Celatom was used to filter undissolved substances. The solvent was then evaporated in vacuo, and the mixture was purified by PTLC $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=5: 1)$ to afford the crude product. 1,3,5-Trimethoxybenzene was used as internal standard to determine the yield.

Yellow solid; m.p. $210-211^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 8.03(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.98(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.89-7.83(\mathrm{~m}$, 2H), 7.83-7.79 (m, 2H), 7.55-7.51 (m, 2H), 7.42-7.34 (m, 2H), 7.21-7.11 (m, 2H), 6.91-6.86 (m, 2H), 6.49-6.37 (m, 2H), 5.94 (d, $J=15.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 5.38$ (d, $J=15.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 3.76$ (s, 3H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR (150 MHz, $\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 159.7,158.6,146.3,142.3,137.2,131.7,131.4,131.2,130.9$, $130.8,130.0,129.8,129.8,129.7,127.8,127.7,127.1,126.9,126.6,125.7,125.5,125.3,124.5$, $123.8,120.8,119.7,114.3,113.8,55.4,50.6$ (One carbon signal was overlapped.);
IR (neat) 2960, 1627, 1511, 1475, 1256, 1034, 806, 742, 675, $524 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{33} \mathrm{H}_{22} \mathrm{NO}_{2} \mathrm{~S}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 528.1086$, found. 528.1085.

Scheme S4-5. Phosphine ligands screening for palladium-catalyzed domino reaction


General procedure
$\mathrm{PdCl}_{2}(\mathrm{PhCN})_{2}$ ( $1.8 \mathrm{mg}, 0.0047 \mathrm{mmol}, 0.1$ equiv. $), 3(20 \mathrm{mg}, 0.047 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv. $)$, CsF ( 28.6 $\mathrm{mg}, 0.188 \mathrm{mmol}, 4.0$ equiv.), and phosphine ligand ( $0.0094 \mathrm{mmol}, 0.2$ equiv.) were added in a reaction tube, and the mixture was dissolved in anhydrous DMA ( 2 mL ) under Argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was stirred at $100{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ for 48 h , then $\mathrm{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added to dissolve the mixture as much as possible (except for inorganic salts). Celatom was used to filter undissolved substances. The solvent was then evaporated in vacuo, and the mixture was purified by PTLC $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : AcOEt $\left.=5: 1\right)$ to afford the crude product. 1,3,5-Trimethoxybenzene was used as internal standard to determine the yield.

## Preparation for other Naphthothiophene Substrates for Palladium-catalyzed Domino Reaction

Scheme S4-6. Synthesis of substrate 30



30


30
1-Chloro- $N$-(4-methoxybenzyl)naphtho[2,1- $b$ ]thiophene-2-carboxamide (30)
To a mixture of 1-chloronaphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carbonyl chloride ${ }^{13}$ ( $281.2 \mathrm{mg}, 1 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and 4-methoxybenzylamine ( $130 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in $\mathrm{DCM}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ chilled in an ice-water bath, added pyridine ( $0.4 \mathrm{~g}, 5 \mathrm{mmol}, 5.0$ equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt . for 12 h . The mixture was concentrated in vacuo to remove DCM and then diluted with AcOEt (20 $\mathrm{mL})$. Organic phase was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine ( 5 mL ). Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1\right)$ to obtain 30 ( $313 \mathrm{mg}, 82 \%$ ).

White solid; m.p. $131-132{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 9.37(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.01-7.92(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.88-7.77(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$, $7.71-7.55(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.50(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.36(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.92(\mathrm{~d}, J=9.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 4.69(\mathrm{~d}, J=$ $5.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.82(\mathrm{~d}, J=2.3 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR (100 MHz, $\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 161.1,159.3,138.5,133.2,132.2,130.2,129.9,129.9,129.4$, $128.9,127.2,126.3,122.6,120.7,119.9,114.4,55.5,44.0$ (One carbon signal was overlapped.); IR (neat) 3427, 3315, 2925, 2837, 1647, 1527, 1292, 1253, 806, $511 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;

HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{21} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{ClNO}_{2} \mathrm{~S}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 382.0663$, found. 382.0661.

Scheme S4-7. Synthesis of substrates 31-35



31
1-Bromo- $N$-(furan-2-ylmethyl)naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxamide (31)
To a mixture of 22 ( $80.1 \mathrm{mg}, 0.261 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{HOBt}(43.2 \mathrm{mg}, 0.32 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 5 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $66 \mathrm{mg}, 0.32 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add furfurylamine ( $28 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.32 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(44.6 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.32 \mathrm{mmol}$, 1.2 equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt . for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with $\mathrm{AcOEt}(20 \mathrm{~mL})$. The filtrate was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5$ $\mathrm{mL} \times 3$ ), sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine ( 5 mL ). Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=4: 1\right)$ to obtain 31 ( $90 \mathrm{mg}, 89 \%$ ).

White solid; m.p. $119-120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 9.73-9.56(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.97(\mathrm{dd}, J=7.9,1.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.89-7.76(\mathrm{~m}$, $2 \mathrm{H}), 7.72-7.68(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.65-7.54(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.43(\mathrm{t}, J=1.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.38(\mathrm{~d}, J=1.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H})$, $4.75(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $100 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 161.4,150.8,142.6,139.1,134.6,132.3,131.0,130.1,129.5$, $128.9,126.9,126.2,122.4,120.5,110.7,108.1,105.8,37.4 ;$
IR (neat) $3279,1615,1527,1284,1200,1146,814,750,675,603 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{18} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{BrNO}_{2} \mathrm{~S}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 385.9845$, found. 385.9841.


32
1-Bromo- $N$-butylnaphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxamide (32)

To a mixture of 22 ( $83.7 \mathrm{mg}, 0.273 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{HOBt}(44.3 \mathrm{mg}, 0.328 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 5 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $67.7 \mathrm{mg}, 0.328 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add $n$ Butylamine ( $32 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.328 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(46 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.328$ mmol, 1.2 equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt . for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with $\operatorname{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$. The filtrate was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$. Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $: \mathrm{AcOEt}=$ $5: 1)$ to obtain 32 ( $81 \mathrm{mg}, 82 \%$ ).

White solid; m.p. $128-129^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 9.67(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.97(\mathrm{dd}, J=8.0,1.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.87-7.78$ $(\mathrm{m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.72-7.64(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.63-7.56(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 3.70-3.51(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 1.75-1.60(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 1.53-$ 1.41 (m, $J=14.9,7.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 1.00(\mathrm{t}, J=7.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR (100 MHz, $\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 161.5,138.9,135.4,132.3,131.0,130.1,129.5,128.7,126.9$, $126.2,122.4,120.6,105.1,40.3,31.6,20.4,14.0 ;$

IR (neat) 3327, 2960, 2929, 2865, 1619, 1535, 1288, 802, 746, 675, $571 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{BrNOS}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 362.0209$, found. 362.0206.

(S)-1-Bromo- $N$-(1-phenylethyl)naphtho[2,1- $b$ ]thiophene-2-carboxamide (33)

To a mixture of 22 ( $307 \mathrm{mg}, 1 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{HOBt}(162.1 \mathrm{mg}, 1.2 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 10 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $247.6 \mathrm{mg}, 1.2 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add (S)-(-)-1-phenylethylamine ( $155 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 1.2 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(167.3$ $\mu \mathrm{L}, 1.2 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt . for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with $\operatorname{AcOEt}(20 \mathrm{~mL})$. The filtrate was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$. Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane $: \mathrm{AcOEt}=$ $4: 1$ ) to obtain 33 ( $373 \mathrm{mg}, 91 \%$ ).

White solid; m.p. $195-196^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 9.69-9.60(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.99-7.95(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.86-7.79(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.70-$ 7.65 (m, 1H), 7.63-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.49-7.44 (m, 2H), 7.42-7.38 (m, 2H), 7.33-7.28 (m, 1H), $5.51-5.42(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 1.70(\mathrm{~d}, J=6.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $150 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 160.7,142.9,139.0,132.4,131.1,130.1,129.5,129.0,128.8$, 127.7, 126.9, 126.4, 126.2, 122.4, 120.6, 50.3, 22.4 (Two carbon signals were overlapped.);

IR (neat) $3303,3025,1627,1543,1308,1276,1200,806,699,552 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{21} \mathrm{H}_{17} \operatorname{BrNOS}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 410.0209$, found. 410.0208 .

(S)-1-Bromo- $N$-(1-(naphthalen-2-yl)ethyl)naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxamide (34)

To a mixture of 22 ( $60 \mathrm{~g}, 0.2 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{HOBt}(33 \mathrm{mg}, 0.24 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 5 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $50 \mathrm{mg}, 0.24 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add (S)-1-(2-naphthyl) ethylamine ( $41.1 \mathrm{mg}, 0.24 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}$ ( 33 $\mu \mathrm{L}, 0.24 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt. for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with $\operatorname{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$. The filtrate was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine ( 5 mL ). Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}\right.$, chloroform) to obtain 34 ( $28.3 \mathrm{mg}, 31 \%$ ).

White solid; m.p. 217-218 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 9.65(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.96(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.0 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.92-7.87$ (m, $2 \mathrm{H}), 7.87-7.82(\mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 7.81(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.70-7.65(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.64-7.56(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.52-$ 7.46 (m, 2H), 5.59-5.44 (m, 1H), 1.79 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 3H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR ( $150 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 160.7,140.2,139.0,135.1,133.6,133.0,132.3,131.1,130.1$, $129.5,128.9,128.8,128.1,127.8,126.9,126.5,126.2,126.2,125.0,124.8,122.4,120.5,105.5$, 50.3, 22.2;

IR (neat) 3331, 2973, 2921, 1623, 1531, 1264, 798, 739, 627, $479 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{19} \operatorname{BrNOS}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 460.0365$, found. 460.0362 .

(S)-1-Bromo- $N$-(1-(4-nitrophenyl)ethyl)naphtho[2,1-b]thiophene-2-carboxamide (35)

To a mixture of 22 ( $66 \mathrm{~g}, 0.215 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{HOBt}(35 \mathrm{mg}, 0.258 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in DMF ( 5 mL ) chilled in an ice-water bath, added DCC ( $54.2 \mathrm{mg}, 0.258 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) in one portion. Stir the mixture for 30 min , and remove the ice bath. Formation of white precipitate (DCU) was observed. Add ( $S$ )- $\alpha$-methyl-4-nitroenzylamine $\cdot \mathrm{HCl}(52.3 \mathrm{mg}, 0.258 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.) and $\mathrm{Et}_{3} \mathrm{~N}(36 \mu \mathrm{~L}, 0.258 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.2$ equiv.). Continue stirring the mixture at rt. for 12 h . Remove DCU by filtration and wash the precipitates on a fritted funnel with AcOEt ( 10 mL ). The filtrate was washed with $1 N$ aq. $\mathrm{HCl}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(5 \mathrm{~mL})$ and brine $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$. Organic layer was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and then filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the crude product. The residue was further purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n-\right.$ hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=3: 1$ ) to obtain 35 ( 98 mg , quant.).

White solid; m.p. 205-206 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 9.68(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.39-8.17(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 8.09-7.93(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, $7.92-7.78(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.78-7.68(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.63-7.55(\mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 5.58-5.26(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 1.75(\mathrm{~d}, J=7.2$ Hz, 3H);
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR (100 MHz, $\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 161.0,150.5,147.4,139.2,134.3,132.3,131.0,130.0,129.6$, $129.1,127.2,127.1,126.3,124.3,122.4,120.5,105.8,50.0,22.4 ;$

IR (neat) $3327,3235,2925,2849,1627,1519,1344,858,802,746,679 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{21} \mathrm{H}_{16} \mathrm{BrN}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{3} \mathrm{~S}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 455.0060$, found. 455.0060 .

Scheme S4-8. Palladium-catalyzed domino reaction with 32

$\mathrm{PdCl}_{2}(\mathrm{PhCN})_{2}$ ( $2.1 \mathrm{mg}, 0.0056 \mathrm{mmol}, 0.1$ equiv.), $32(20.1 \mathrm{mg}, 0.0555 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.), CsF ( $34 \mathrm{mg}, 0.222 \mathrm{mmol}, 4.0$ equiv.) were added in a reaction tube, and the mixture was dissolved in anhydrous DMA ( 2 mL ) under Argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was stirred at scheduled temperature for 48 h , then $\mathrm{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added to dissolve the mixture as much as possible
(except for inorganic salts). Celatom was used to filter undissolved substances. The solvent was then evaporated in vacuo, and the mixture was purified by PTLC ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=5$ : 1) to afford the crude product $\mathbf{3 6}(0.3 \mathrm{mg}, 11 \%) .1,3,5$-Trimethoxybenzene was used as internal standard to determine the yield.

Yellow solid; m.p. $263-264^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 8.03(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.98(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.92(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.6$ $\mathrm{Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.89-7.81$ (m, 3H), 7.53-7.42 (m, 1H), 7.40-7.35 (m, 1H), 7.22-7.13 (m, 2H), 6.51$6.46(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.44-6.39(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 4.76-4.64(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 4.34-4.25(\mathrm{~m}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 2.13-1.94(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H})$, $1.62-1.57(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 1.06(\mathrm{t}, J=7.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( $150 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 158.3,146.5,142.1,137.0,131.8,131.7,131.3,130.9,130.8$, $130.0,129.8,129.7,129.6,127.8,127.7,126.9,126.7,125.7,125.4,125.3,124.5,123.8,120.9$, 119.8, 113.5, 48.4, 29.8, 20.5, 14.0;

IR (neat) $3431,3057,2928,1642,1503,1483,1169,802,746,675 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{20} \mathrm{NNaOS}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{Na})^{+} 486.0957$, found. 486.0950 .

Scheme 4S-9. Palladium-catalyzed domino reaction with 29

$\mathrm{PdCl}_{2}(\mathrm{PhCN})_{2}$ ( $1.3 \mathrm{mg}, 0.00345 \mathrm{mmol}, 0.1$ equiv.), 29 ( $15 \mathrm{mg}, 0.0345 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.), CsF ( 21 $\mathrm{mg}, 0.138 \mathrm{mmol}, 4.0$ equiv.) were added in a reaction tube, and the mixture was dissolved in anhydrous DMA ( 2 mL ) under Argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was stirred at scheduled temperature for 48 h , then $\mathrm{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ was added to dissolve the mixture as much as possible (except for inorganic salts). Celatom was used to filter undissolved substances. The solvent was then evaporated in vacuo, and the mixture was purified by PTLC ( $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n$-hexane : $\mathrm{AcOEt}=5$ : 1) to afford the crude product. Target compound 37 was not found, while 2.3 mg of debrominated product $\mathbf{3 8}$ was collected in $19 \%$ yield.

Pal yellow solid; m.p. $216-217^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR ( $400 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{CDCl}_{3}$ ) $\delta 9.06(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.77(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.2 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.99-7.90(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.87(\mathrm{~d}$, $J=9.1 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.77$ (dd, $J=1.7,0.9 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 7.72-7.60(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.40-7.32(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 6.97-6.90$ (m, 2H), $6.54(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 4.69(\mathrm{~d}, J=5.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 3.82(\mathrm{~s}, 3 \mathrm{H}), 2.78$ (d, $J=0.7 \mathrm{~Hz}, 3 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13} \mathbf{C}$ NMR (100 MHz, $\left.\mathrm{CDCl}_{3}\right) \delta 167.8,159.3,135.7,132.9,132.0,131.6,130.9,130.5,130.2$, $129.6,128.8,127.2,127.1,125.4,123.3,122.5,120.6,114.4,55.5,44.0,20.2$ (One carbon signal was overlapped.);
IR (neat) $3272,2921,1634,1515,1244,1176,1041,822,746,580 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{24} \mathrm{H}_{22} \mathrm{NO}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 356.1645$, found. 356.1643.

Scheme 4S-10. Deprotection of PMB group


Sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b
The solution of $\mathbf{8}(12 \mathrm{mg}, 0.023 \mathrm{mmol})$ in TFA ( 2 mL ) was refluxed for 48 h under Argon atmosphere. The reaction was cooled to rt. and quenched with sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(10 \mathrm{~mL})$ and extracted with $\mathrm{AcOEt}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$. Organic layers were combined and washed with water ( 10 mL ) and brine ( 5 mL ). Organic phase was then dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and filtered to collect the filtrate which was concentrated in vacuo to obtain the residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, n\right.$-hexane : $\left.\mathrm{AcOEt}=1: 1\right)$ to obtain $\mathbf{1 b}(7.6 \mathrm{mg}, 82 \%)$

Scheme 4S-11. Oxidation of sulfur atoms in 1b
Preparation of TFPAA (trifluoroperoxyacetic acid)


Trifluoroacetic anhydride ( $1.4 \mathrm{~mL}, 10 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) was added dropwise to a solution of $30 \%$ $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{2}(1.0 \mathrm{~mL}, 10 \mathrm{mmol}, 1.0$ equiv.) in $\mathrm{DCM}(2 \mathrm{~mL})$ under stirring at ice bath during more than 10 min . Then the mixture was allowed to stir at rt . for 0.5 h . The resulted solution of TFPAA in DCM was used directly for the following oxidation reaction immediately.


Sulfonyl groups containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 39
TFPAA solution in DCM prepared immediately was added dropwise to the solution of $\mathbf{1 b}$ ( 15 mg , $0.037 \mathrm{mmol})$ in dry THF ( 10 mL ) under stirring at ice bath. The resulted solution was allowed to
stir at rt . for 7 days. The reaction was quenched with sat. aq. $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{~S}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{3}(20 \mathrm{~mL})$ and stirred at rt . for 2 h . The resulted solution was extracted by $\operatorname{AcOEt}(10 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$. Organic layers were combined and washed with sat. aq. $\mathrm{NaHCO}_{3}(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$, water $(5 \mathrm{~mL} \times 3)$ and brine $(5 \mathrm{~mL})$. Organic phase was dried over $\mathrm{Na}_{2} \mathrm{SO}_{4}$ and filtered to collect the filtrate which was evaporated in vacuo to obtain the residue. The residue was purified by column chromatography $\left(\mathrm{SiO}_{2}, \mathrm{AcOEt}\right)$ to obtain 39 (1.9 $\mathrm{mg}, 11 \%$ )

Yellow solid; m.p. > $300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$;
${ }^{1} \mathbf{H}$ NMR $\left(600 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{DMSO}-d_{6}\right) \delta 8.35(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.06(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.4 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 8.03-8.00$ $(\mathrm{m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.99-7.92(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.35-7.23(\mathrm{~m}, 2 \mathrm{H}), 7.05(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.6 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H}), 6.96(\mathrm{~d}, J=8.5 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{H})$, 6.67-6.55 (m, 2H), $5.38(\mathrm{~s}, 1 \mathrm{H})$;
${ }^{13}$ C NMR ( 150 MHz, DMSO- $d_{6}$ ) $\delta 174.5,139.6,138.0,135.4,135.0,133.7,131.7,130.1,128.8$, $128.7,128.6,128.3,128.1,127.9,127.9,126.8,126.3,126.1,125.7,125.6,118.7,117.1,116.7$ (Two carbon signals were overlapped.);

IR (neat) $3435,3064,1655,1543,1447,1384,1125,746,599,523 \mathrm{~cm}^{-1}$;
HRMS (ESI) $m / z$ calcd for $\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{14} \mathrm{NO}_{5} \mathrm{~S}_{2}(\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{H})^{+} 472.0308$, found. 472.0309.

(M)-39
$(M)-\mathbf{3 9}$ (11\% yield) was obtained, following the same procedure of oxidation of ( $d l$ ) - $\mathbf{1 b}$.
Yellow solid, m.p. $>300^{\circ} \mathrm{C},[\alpha]_{\mathrm{D}}{ }^{22}=-983.6(\mathrm{c}=0.5, \mathrm{DMSO})$.

## References:

1. Fu, W. C.; Wang, Z.; Chan, W. T. K.; Lin, Z.; Kwong, F. Y. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2017, 56, 7166.
2. Wu, R.; ‘Pete’Silks, L. A.; Olivault-Shiflett, M.; Williams, R. F.; Ortiz, E. G.; Stotter, P.; Kimball, D. B.; Martinez, R. A. J. Label Compd. Radiopharm, 2013, 56, 581.
3. Nakano, K.; Hidehira, Y.; Takahashi, K.; Hiyama, T.; Nozaki, K. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 2005, 44, 7136.
4. Hayashi, T.; Iwamura, H.; Uozumi, Y.; Matumoto, Y.; Ozawa, F. Synthesis 1994, 526.
5. María, J.; Álvarez-Calero; Jorge, Z. D.; Massanet, G. M. Org. Lett. 2016, 18, 6344.
6. Banwell, M. G.; Lupton, D. W.; Ma, X.; Renner, J.; Sydnes, M. O. Org. Lett. 2004, 6, 2741.
7. Nelson, T. D.; Crouch, R. D. Organic Reactions (Hoboken, NJ, United States), 2004, 63, 265.
8. Ferraccioli, R.; Carenzi, D.; Motti, E.; Catellani, M. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 2006, 128, 722.
9. Paegle, E.; Belyakov, S.; Arsenyan, P. Eur. J. Org. Chem. 2014, 3831.
10. Vergura, S.; Scafato, P.; Belviso, S.; Suprechi, S. Chem. Eur. J. 2019, 25, 5682.
11. Mézlová, M.; Petříčkováb, H.; Maloňc, P.; Kozmíka, V.; Svoboda, J. Collect. Czech. Chem. Comтии. 2003, 68, 1020.
12. Carpino, L. A.; Abdel-Maksoud, A. A.; Dumitru, L.; Mansour, E. M. E.; Zewail, M. A. J. Org. Chem. 2007, 72, 1729.
13. Irgashev, R. A.; Demina, N. S.; Rusinov, G. L. Org. Biomol. Chem. 2020, 18, 3164.
14. Krasodomski, W.; Łuczyn'ski, M. K.; Wilamowski, J.; Sepioł, J. J. Tetrahedron, 2003, 59, 5677.

## HPLC chart

For amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1a: CHIRALPAK AD-H (4.6 mm $\times 250$ mm ), $n$-hexane : IPA $=9: 1$, flow $: 1.0 \mathrm{~mL} / \mathrm{min}, \mathrm{UV}: 254 \mathrm{~nm}$.

(dl)-1a

$(P)-\mathbf{1 a}$

(M)-1 $\mathbf{a}$
(1) Chromatogram of racemic amide-functionalized [7]helicene 1a


|  | Retention time (min) | Peak area (\%) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 10.7 | 50.3 |
| 2 | 13.3 | 49.7 |

(2) Chromatogram of $(P)$-amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1a

(3) Chromatogram of ( $M$ )-amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1a


For sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene 1b: CHIRALPAK IC (4.6 mm $\times 250$ mm ), $n$-hexane $: \operatorname{IPA}=9: 1$, flow $: 1.0 \mathrm{~mL} / \mathrm{min}$, UV : 254 nm .

(dl)-1b

( $P$ )-1b

(M)-1b
(1) Chromatogram of racemic sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule

1b

(2) Chromatogram of $(P)$-sulfur-containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b

(3) Chromatogram of ( $M$ )-sulfur containing amide-functionalized [7]helicene-like molecule 1b


## Calculation

Density functional theory (DFT) calculations were performed using the Gaussian 16 software package. ${ }^{1}$ The molecular geometries for the transition states (TS) were first estimated with the Reaction plus software package, based on the nudged elastic band method, ${ }^{2}$ and were subsequently re-optimized using the Gaussian 16 software package. Once the stationary points were obtained at B3LYP/6-31G (d,p) level, ${ }^{3}$ the harmonic vibrational frequencies were calculated at the same level to estimate the Gibbs free energy. The nature of the stationary points was characterized via vibrational analysis. All of the Gibbs free energy values reported in this paper were calculated for a temperature of 298.15 K . All of the transition structures reported were optimized without constraints and the intrinsic reaction coordinate (IRC) routes were calculated in both directions toward the corresponding minima for the transition-state structure. For each gas-phase optimized structure (potential energy minimum or transition state computed at B3LYP/6-31G ( $\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p}$ ) level of theory), additional single-point energy calculations were performed at $\omega$ B97XD/6-311+G(d,p) level of theory, ${ }^{4}$ in which solvent effects were also taken into account by estimating the solvation free energies (for chlorobenzene as solvent).

1. Gaussian 16, Revision C.01, Frisch, M. J.; Trucks, G. W.; Schlegel, H. B.; Scuseria, G. E.; Robb, M. A.; Cheeseman, J. R.; Scalmani, G.; Barone, V.; Petersson, G. A.; Nakatsuji, H.; Li, X.; Caricato, M.; Marenich, A. V.; Bloino, J.; Janesko, B. G.; Gomperts, R.; Mennucci, B.; Hratchian, H. P.; Ortiz, J. V.; Izmaylov, A. F.; Sonnenberg, J. L.; Williams-Young, D.; Ding, F.; Lipparini, F.; Egidi, F.; Goings, J.; Peng, B.; Petrone, A.; Henderson, T.; Ranasinghe, D.; Zakrzewski, V. G.; Gao, J.; Rega, N.; Zheng, G.; Liang, W.; Hada, M.; Ehara, M.; Toyota, K.; Fukuda, R.; Hasegawa, J.; Ishida, M.; Nakajima, T.; Honda, Y.; Kitao, O.; Nakai, H.; Vreven, T.; Throssell, K.; Montgomery, J. A., Jr.; Peralta, J. E.; Ogliaro, F.; Bearpark, M. J.; Heyd, J. J.; Brothers, E. N.; Kudin, K. N.; Staroverov, V. N.; Keith, T. A.; Kobayashi, R.; Normand, J.; Raghavachari, K.; Rendell, A. P.; Burant, J. C.; Iyengar, S. S.; Tomasi, J.; Cossi, M.; Millam, J. M.; Klene, M.; Adamo, C.; Cammi, R.; Ochterski, J. W.; Martin, R. L.; Morokuma, K.; Farkas, O.; Foresman, J. B.; Fox, D. J. Gaussian, Inc., Wallingford CT, 2016.
2. Henkelman, G.; Jónsson, H.; J. Chem. Phys. 2000, 113, 9978-9985.
3. (a) Becke, A. D. J. Chem. Phys. 1993, 98, 5648 - 5652. (b) Lee, C.; Yang, W.; Parr, R. G. Phys. Rev. B 1988, 37, 785-789. (c) Stephens, P. J.; Devlin, F. J.; Chabalowski, C. F.; Frisch, M. J. J. Phys. Chem. 1994, 98, 11623-11627.
4. Chai, J.-D.; Head-Gordon, M. Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys. 2008, 10, 6615-6620.

## The energies and coordinates of each structure

1a
(1) Transition state


Calculation Method = RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{NO}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin = Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
Imaginary Freq = 1
Temperature $=$ 298.15 Kelvin
Pressure $=1 \mathrm{~atm}$
$E($ RB3LYP $)=-1245.3257$ Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.373085$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.393337$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.394282$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.326251$ Hartree
EE + Zero-point Energy $=-1244.9526$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Energy Correction $=-1244.9324$ Hartree
EE + Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-1244.9314$ Hartree
EE + Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-1244.9995$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=246.823 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=88.801 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$
Entropy $(S)=143.182 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$

Calculation Type $=\mathrm{SP}$
Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD

| Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{NO}$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$ |  |  |  |
| Charge $=0$ |  |  |  |
| Spin $=$ Singlet |  |  |  |
| Solvation $=\mathrm{scrf}=$ solvent=chlorobenzene |  |  |  |
| $E($ RwB97XD $)=-1245.1765$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| 01 |  |  |  |
| H | 4.33509800 | $-2.34277800$ | -0.05816300 |
| C | 3.29227900 | -2.09425800 | $-0.21623300$ |
| H | 2.92099600 | -3.49329500 | $-1.80224900$ |
| C | 2.51203600 | $-2.73329400$ | $-1.14300700$ |
| C | 1.43950600 | -0.51565200 | 0.29919100 |
| C | 1.12109700 | $-2.46545900$ | -1.17187600 |
| C | 2.78215900 | -0.95145800 | 0.44243900 |
| C | 0.54918900 | $-1.53407200$ | $-0.25615600$ |
| C | 0.26466300 | -3.18955400 | -2.07136600 |
| H | -0.58888600 | $-1.20755000$ | 2.16846500 |
| C | -1.08770700 | -3.16611600 | $-1.93407900$ |
| H | 0.73566100 | -3.76954600 | $-2.86027200$ |
| H | -1.73139600 | $-3.70104300$ | $-2.62673200$ |
| C | -1.65792900 | $-2.59202100$ | -0.75162200 |
| C | -2.96561900 | $-2.93875600$ | -0.34430800 |
| C | -0.82550400 | $-1.82259900$ | 0.12127900 |
| C | -3.39808200 | -2.67979900 | 0.94240800 |
| H | -3.59834300 | -3.48667800 | -1.03759200 |
| H | -4.38808200 | $-2.99262200$ | 1.26053300 |
| C | -2.52122500 | $-2.07148200$ | 1.85692600 |
| H | -2.82170700 | $-1.94412300$ | 2.89248500 |
| C | -1.27415200 | $-1.63614700$ | 1.44721000 |
| H | 3.50788400 | 3.53215900 | $-0.03034300$ |
| C | 2.55784000 | 3.01761600 | -0.14120600 |
| H | 1.76925700 | 4.36097500 | -1.60797500 |
| C | 1.59827100 | 3.47575700 | $-1.00265300$ |
| C | 1.21640000 | 0.97284100 | 0.32635700 |
| C | 0.33665100 | 2.83493300 | -1.04932700 |


| C | 2.39504600 | 1.74837500 | 0.46585800 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| C | 0.07697700 | 1.72495600 | -0.19419800 |
| C | -0.70369500 | 3.34693400 | -1.89565500 |
| H | -0.88166000 | 0.93705900 | 2.19660100 |
| C | -1.99043000 | 2.92432600 | -1.77050400 |
| H | -0.43044100 | 4.09073700 | -2.63938100 |
| H | -2.77147100 | 3.29619500 | -2.42733800 |
| C | -2.34986600 | 2.13277700 | -0.63254300 |
| C | -3.69620300 | 2.05448400 | -0.20907900 |
| C | -1.31774200 | 1.58339100 | 0.19346100 |
| C | -4.01519800 | 1.60204300 | 1.05662600 |
| H | -4.47152800 | 2.43492000 | -0.86885500 |
| H | -5.04886900 | 1.59165200 | 1.38937100 |
| C | -2.98616600 | 1.22179300 | 1.93593600 |
| H | -3.22175500 | 0.94957000 | 2.96020000 |
| C | -1.67356000 | 1.19325400 | 1.50343000 |
| N | 3.51322500 | 1.21283900 | 1.08571800 |
| H | 4.28959300 | 1.82226600 | 1.31129200 |
| C | 3.80694000 | -0.13386300 | 1.11444900 |
| O | 4.86090300 | -0.55268300 | 1.58117400 |

(2) Ground state $1[(P)$-1a]


Calculation Method = RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{NO}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
Imaginary Freq $=0$
Temperature $=298.15$ Kelvin

$$
\text { Pressure }=1 \mathrm{~atm}
$$

$E($ RB3LYP $)=-1245.3915$ Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.374556$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.395583$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.396527$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.326018$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-1245.0169$ Hartree
EE + Thermal Energy Correction $=-1244.9959$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-1244.9949$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-1245.0654$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=248.232 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=90.374 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-$ kelvin
Entropy $(S)=148.399 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$

Calculation Type $=\mathrm{SP}$
Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{NO}$
Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ scrf $=$ solvent $=$ chlorobenzene
$E($ RwB97XD $)=-1245.2447$ Hartree

01
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{O} & 5.13088000 & -0.15456800 & 0.35915600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}C & 3.95329500 & 0.11942700 & 0.14828200\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 2.82445300 & -0.81946600 & 0.29367800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 3.14287300 & -2.13709700 & 0.68556300\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 2.14867600 & -3.07547300 & 0.77299500\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{H} & 2.35351400 & -4.07234200 & 1.15280100\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 0.84816600 & -2.78379400 & 0.28586700\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 0.54142100 & -1.49316200 & -0.23814600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 1.50254400 & -0.43389100 & -0.02134400\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -0.15639600 & -3.80670300 & 0.30739100\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 0.08919600 & -4.75248800 & 0.78231600\end{array}$

| C | -1.38084300 | -3.60445100 | -0.24656600 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| H | -2.14331600 | -4.37767000 | -0.20713400 |
| C | -1.65611700 | -2.40633700 | -0.97980000 |
| C | -0.68068900 | -1.36268600 | -1.02563100 |
| C | -2.85182200 | -2.28886500 | -1.72718900 |
| H | -3.58707000 | -3.08607200 | -1.65570200 |
| C | -3.06796300 | -1.21092600 | -2.55991900 |
| H | -3.98444100 | -1.13717500 | -3.13761300 |
| C | -2.06920700 | -0.22753300 | -2.68559900 |
| H | -2.20330500 | 0.59536000 | -3.38131200 |
| C | -0.90851500 | -0.30448400 | -1.93938000 |
| H | -0.14688000 | 0.44968400 | -2.08066600 |
| N | 3.59015800 | 1.35239900 | -0.36580900 |
| H | 4.36376500 | 1.97548400 | -0.55991600 |
| C | 2.29982000 | 1.85052100 | -0.39808900 |
| C | 1.21724400 | 1.01658900 | -0.04625600 |
| C | -0.05165500 | 1.66210800 | 0.20340100 |
| C | -0.25486600 | 2.97578000 | -0.31058600 |
| C | 0.83863100 | 3.70845000 | -0.83703200 |
| H | 0.66521700 | 4.71257000 | -1.21309500 |
| C | 2.10646100 | 3.19041400 | -0.80583200 |
| H | 2.96286600 | 3.77764000 | -1.12518300 |
| C | -1.11705200 | 1.10234800 | 1.02813000 |
| C | -2.40686100 | 1.71946900 | 1.02107100 |
| C | -2.61085200 | 2.93770000 | 0.29791300 |
| H | -3.60190700 | 3.38267900 | 0.29257700 |
| C | -1.55849500 | 3.56988500 | -0.28577900 |
| H | -1.68459600 | 4.54295200 | -0.75292000 |
| C | -0.91178300 | 0.03827200 | 1.94090700 |
| H | 0.07862200 | -0.37981500 | 2.05663800 |
| C | -1.93906100 | -0.45783600 | 2.72017300 |
| H | -1.74038800 | -1.26818600 | 3.41506300 |
| C | -3.23266600 | 0.08984600 | 2.62925500 |
| H | -4.04077600 | -0.31364300 | 3.23212300 |
| -3.45251700 | 1.17053600 | 1.80132700 |  |
| -4.43096600 | 1.64183800 | 1.75934700 |  |

## (3) Ground state 2 [(M)-1a]

Calculation Method $=$ RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{NO}$
Basis Set $=6-31 G(d, p)$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
Imaginary Freq $=0$
Temperature $=298.15$ Kelvin
Pressure $=1$ atm
$E($ RB3LYP $)=-1245.3915$ Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.374558$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.395586$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.39653$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.326018$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-1245.0169$ Hartree
EE + Thermal Energy Correction $=-1244.9959$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-1244.9949$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-1245.0654$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=248.234 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=90.374 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-$ kelvin
Entropy $(S)=148.405 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}$-kelvin

Calculation Type $=\mathrm{SP}$
Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{29} \mathrm{H}_{17} \mathrm{NO}$
Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=\mathrm{scrf}=$ solvent $=$ chlorobenzene
$E($ RwB97XD $)=-1245.2447$ Hartree

01
$\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{H} & -4.17535500 & -2.35207200 & 0.93756400\end{array}$

| C | -3.14320100 | -2.13651300 | 0.68585400 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| H | -2.35427300 | $-4.07194500$ | 1.15296700 |
| C | -2.14922100 | -3.07510500 | 0.77320000 |
| C | -1.50255800 | $-0.43364500$ | -0.02116700 |
| C | -0.84868700 | $-2.78370500$ | 0.28599300 |
| C | -2.82453200 | -0.81896200 | 0.29395700 |
| C | -0.54167100 | $-1.49316200$ | -0.23803600 |
| C | 0.15560400 | -3.80688500 | 0.30747000 |
| H | 0.14705200 | 0.44938600 | -2.08075500 |
| C | 1.38008000 | -3.60493200 | -0.24648000 |
| H | -0.09027600 | $-4.75262800$ | 0.78232800 |
| H | 2.14236500 | $-4.37833000$ | -0.20710200 |
| C | 1.65563300 | $-2.40687600$ | -0.97970700 |
| C | 2.85136500 | -2.28973300 | -1.72710400 |
| C | 0.68047300 | $-1.36299600$ | $-1.02554600$ |
| C | 3.06774500 | -1.21189600 | -2.55990200 |
| H | 3.58643600 | -3.08709300 | -1.65554800 |
| H | 3.98423400 | $-1.13838000$ | -3.13760500 |
| C | 2.06920300 | -0.22831500 | $-2.68566400$ |
| H | 2.20343700 | 0.59446100 | -3.38149000 |
| C | 0.90851500 | $-0.30493500$ | -1.93939700 |
| H | -2.96222700 | 3.77778300 | $-1.12595200$ |
| C | -2.10590100 | 3.19053300 | -0.80643200 |
| H | -0.66449500 | 4.71244900 | $-1.21387700$ |
| C | -0.83801500 | 3.70841500 | $-0.83763800$ |
| C | -1.21698200 | 1.01674100 | -0.04645100 |
| C | 0.25534800 | 2.97573800 | -0.31094200 |
| C | -2.29946200 | 1.85080400 | $-0.39832800$ |
| C | 0.05199300 | 1.66213800 | 0.20315000 |
| C | 1.55899700 | 3.56979400 | $-0.28601900$ |
| H | -0.07849400 | -0.37978100 | 2.05645700 |
| C | 2.61121800 | 2.93763700 | 0.29790100 |
| H | 1.68517400 | 4.54282300 | -0.75321300 |
| H | 3.60228000 | 3.38259700 | 0.29275400 |
| C | 2.40709100 | 1.71946200 | 1.02111000 |
| C | 3.45264100 | 1.17059600 | 1.80154200 |


| C | 1.11728900 | 1.10234500 | 1.02801300 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | :---: |
| C | 3.23268100 | 0.08994700 | 2.62950200 |
| H | 4.43110100 | 1.64187900 | 1.75964800 |
| H | 4.04069400 | -0.31348400 | 3.23253300 |
| C | 1.93908100 | -0.45772300 | 2.72026500 |
| H | 1.74029800 | -1.26802400 | 3.41518300 |
| C | 0.91190500 | 0.03833300 | 1.94082300 |
| N | -3.58985900 | 1.35297800 | -0.36561900 |
| H | -4.36339200 | 1.97604500 | -0.56001200 |
| C | -3.95315600 | 0.12010300 | 0.14850200 |
| O | -5.13080000 | -0.15372000 | 0.35932900 |

10
(1) Transition state


Calculation Method = RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
E(RB3LYP) $=-5582.0054$ Hartree
Imaginary Freq $=1$
Temperature $=$ 298.15 Kelvin
Pressure $=1 \mathrm{~atm}$

Electronic Energy (EE) $=-5582.0054$ Hartree

| Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.213254$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.228574$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.229518$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.169638$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| EE + Zero-point Energy $=-5581.7921$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Energy Correction $=-5581.7768$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-5581.7758$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| EE + Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-5581.8357$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=143.432 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ |  |  |  |
| Heat Capacity (Cv) $=62.04 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$ |  |  |  |
| Entropy $(S)=126.029 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}$-kelvin |  |  |  |
| Calculation Type $=$ SP |  |  |  |
| Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD |  |  |  |
| Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}$ |  |  |  |
| Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$ |  |  |  |
| Charge $=0$ |  |  |  |
| Spin $=$ Singlet |  |  |  |
| Solvation $=$ scrf $=$ solvent $=$ chlorobenzene |  |  |  |
| $E($ RwB97XD $)=-5586.2993$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| 01 |  |  |  |
| C | 3.00912400 | 3.20429300 | 0.00013600 |
| C | 1.85193600 | 2.43293600 | 0.00011800 |
| C | 4.27342000 | 2.61298300 | 0.00007900 |
| C | 4.35886200 | 1.22716100 | 0.00001400 |
| H | 5.17336800 | 3.21926800 | 0.00008400 |
| H | 5.32482500 | 0.73160500 | -0.00002400 |
| C | 3.18879300 | 0.47232800 | 0.00000200 |
| C | 1.87743800 | 1.02491600 | 0.00004000 |
| C | 0.78338200 | 0.01824900 | -0.00001400 |
| C | 1.32759800 | -1.26716700 | -0.00007400 |
| C | -2.61829800 | 3.44263700 | 0.00001600 |
| C | -1.53716700 | 2.57360700 | $-0.00000400$ |
| C | -3.93168700 | 2.95877500 | 0.00004600 |
| C | -4.14340300 | 1.59000100 | 0.00004700 |


| H | -4.77344600 | 3.64421000 | 0.00007100 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | :---: |
| H | -5.15154500 | 1.18694800 | 0.00006500 |
| C | -3.04866200 | 0.72085000 | 0.00002000 |
| C | -1.69536500 | 1.17226200 | 0.00000400 |
| C | -0.69974800 | 0.07190100 | 0.00000200 |
| C | -1.35886400 | -1.16038700 | 0.00000700 |
| N | 0.61292700 | -2.42717900 | -0.00012700 |
| H | 1.07865700 | -3.32616700 | -0.00015700 |
| C | -0.77230300 | -2.47611300 | -0.00003400 |
| O | -1.38487300 | -3.54213900 | -0.00001400 |
| H | 2.91446700 | 4.28580400 | 0.00019700 |
| H | 0.92413700 | 2.96774300 | 0.00018100 |
| H | -0.56321800 | 3.01873000 | -0.00004400 |
| H | -2.43284400 | 4.51224300 | 0.00000500 |
| Se | -3.22060800 | -1.14139800 | 0.00002000 |
| Se | 3.19424800 | -1.40649600 | -0.00007300 |

(2) Ground state 1 [(P)-10]


Calculation Method $=$ RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 G(\mathrm{~d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
$E($ RB3LYP $)=-5582.0156$ Hartree
RMS Gradient Norm $=1.4242 \mathrm{e}-05$ Hartree/Bohr
Imaginary Freq $=0$

```
Temperature = 298.15 Kelvin
```

Pressure $=1 \mathrm{~atm}$
Frequencies scaled by $=1$
Electronic Energy $(E E)=-5582.0156$ Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.214049$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.229829$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.230773$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.170023$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-5581.8015$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Energy Correction $=-5581.7857$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-5581.7848$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-5581.8455$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=144.22 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=63.31 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$
Entropy $(S)=127.861 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$
Calculation Type $=$ SP
Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ scrf $=$ solvent $=$ chlorobenzene
$E($ RwB97XD $)=-5586.3112$ Hartree
01

| C | 2.72563500 | 3.11311200 | 0.80262900 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| C | 1.62563400 | 2.27546600 | 0.65006400 |
| C | 4.01907800 | 2.66404700 | 0.51287600 |
| C | 4.21772400 | 1.34342200 | 0.12077100 |
| H | 4.86976400 | 3.32849600 | 0.62626400 |
| H | 5.22033700 | 0.96476000 | -0.05188900 |
| C | 3.11186900 | 0.50836000 | -0.01474000 |
| C | 1.78161700 | 0.95602800 | 0.18266900 |
| C | 0.76365700 | -0.07935600 | -0.01263400 |
| C | 1.32515600 | -1.33813000 | -0.16725400 |


| C | -2.30825400 | 3.35932800 | -0.76359800 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| C | -1.30017000 | 2.41685500 | -0.61766700 |
| C | -3.64332800 | 3.02993800 | -0.48428900 |
| C | -3.97738400 | 1.73391400 | -0.11443700 |
| H | -4.42240700 | 3.77861600 | -0.59099000 |
| H | -5.01483800 | 1.45922000 | 0.04894100 |
| C | -2.96529500 | 0.77822100 | 0.01001400 |
| C | -1.59687000 | 1.11104700 | -0.17528500 |
| C | -0.69034800 | -0.02414400 | 0.00215100 |
| C | -1.37837200 | -1.22243000 | 0.14760800 |
| N | 0.59220200 | -2.48915600 | -0.16388200 |
| H | 1.03625600 | -3.39371700 | -0.26100400 |
| C | -0.78494500 | -2.53813200 | 0.09991700 |
| O | -1.37307000 | -3.61015000 | 0.20803000 |
| H | 2.57421400 | 4.12539100 | 1.16481300 |
| H | 0.64588500 | 2.63697400 | 0.93121900 |
| H | -0.28601500 | 2.68086200 | -0.88486700 |
| H | -2.05961100 | 4.35780500 | -1.10963800 |
| Se | -3.23597700 | -1.06242100 | 0.30655600 |
| Se | 3.19842300 | -1.35400300 | -0.34957600 |

(3) Ground state 2 [(M)-10]

Calculation Method $=$ RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
$\mathrm{E}($ RB3LYP $)=-5582.0156$ Hartree
RMS Gradient Norm $=1.4254 \mathrm{e}-05$ Hartree/Bohr
Imaginary Freq $=0$
Temperature $=298.15$ Kelvin
Pressure $=1 \mathrm{~atm}$

Electronic Energy (EE) $=-5582.0156$ Hartree

| Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.214049$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.229829$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.230773$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.170023$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-5581.8015$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Energy Correction $=-5581.7857$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-5581.7848$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-5581.8455$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=144.22 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$ |  |  |  |
| Heat Capacity (Cv) $=63.31 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$ |  |  |  |
| Entropy (S) = $127.861 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$ |  |  |  |
| Calculation Type $=$ SP |  |  |  |
| Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD |  |  |  |
| Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}$ |  |  |  |
| Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$ |  |  |  |
| Charge $=0$ |  |  |  |
| Spin $=$ Singlet |  |  |  |
| Solvation $=$ scrf $=$ solvent=chlorobenzene |  |  |  |
| $E(R w B 97 X D)=-5586.3112$ Hartree |  |  |  |
| 01 |  |  |  |
| C | 2.72563600 | 3.11311300 | -0.80262700 |
| C | 1.62563400 | 2.27546700 | -0.65006300 |
| C | 4.01907900 | 2.66404600 | -0.51287500 |
| C | 4.21772400 | 1.34342200 | -0.12077000 |
| H | 4.86976500 | 3.32849500 | -0.62626200 |
| H | 5.22033800 | 0.96476000 | 0.05188900 |
| C | 3.11186900 | 0.50836000 | 0.01474100 |
| C | 1.78161800 | 0.95602800 | -0.18266900 |
| C | 0.76365700 | $-0.07935600$ | 0.01263300 |
| C | 1.32515600 | $-1.33813000$ | 0.16725400 |
| C | -2.30825500 | 3.35932800 | 0.76359700 |
| C | -1.30017000 | 2.41685600 | 0.61766600 |
| C | -3.64332900 | 3.02993800 | 0.48428800 |
| C | -3.97738500 | 1.73391400 | 0.11443700 |

Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.214049$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.229829$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.170023$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-5581.8015$ Hartree

+ Thermal Energy Correction $=-5581.7857$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-5581.7848$ Hartree
EE + Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-5581.8455$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=144.22 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Entropy $(S)=127.861 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-$ kelvin
Calculation Type $=\mathrm{SP}$
Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOSe}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$
Charge $=0$
Solvation $=\mathrm{scrf}=$ solvent $=$ chlorobenzene
$E($ RwB97XD $)=-5586.3112$ Hartree
01

| H | -4.42240700 | 3.77861600 | 0.59098900 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| H | -5.01483900 | 1.45922000 | -0.04894000 |
| C | -2.96529500 | 0.77822100 | -0.01001400 |
| C | -1.59687000 | 1.11104700 | 0.17528500 |
| C | -0.69034900 | -0.02414400 | -0.00215200 |
| C | -1.37837200 | -1.22243000 | -0.14760800 |
| N | 0.59220200 | -2.48915600 | 0.16388200 |
| H | 1.03625600 | -3.39371700 | 0.26100400 |
| C | -0.78494500 | -2.53813200 | -0.09991600 |
| O | -1.37307000 | -3.61015000 | -0.20803000 |
| H | 2.57421500 | 4.12539200 | -1.16481100 |
| H | 0.64588600 | 2.63697500 | -0.93121800 |
| H | -0.28601500 | 2.68086300 | 0.88486600 |
| H | -2.05961200 | 4.35780500 | 1.10963600 |
| Se | -3.23597700 | -1.06242100 | -0.30655500 |
| Se | 3.19842300 | -1.35400300 | 0.34957500 |

1n
(1) Transition state


Calculation Method = RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin = Singlet
Solvation = None
$\mathrm{E}($ RB3LYP $)=-1579.6334$ Hartree
Imaginary Freq $=1$

```
Imaginary Freq \(=1\)
Temperature \(=298.15\) Kelvin
Pressure \(=1\) atm
Electronic Energy \((E E)=-1579.6334\) Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction \(=0.214228\) Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy \(=0.228924\) Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy \(=0.229868\) Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy \(=0.172545\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{EE}+\) Zero-point Energy \(=-1579.4192\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{EE}+\) Thermal Energy Correction \(=-1579.4045\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{EE}+\) Thermal Enthalpy Correction \(=-1579.4035\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{EE}+\) Thermal Free Energy Correction \(=-1579.4608\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{E}(\) Thermal \()=143.652 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}\)
Heat Capacity \((\mathrm{Cv})=61.269 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}\)
Entropy \((S)=120.647 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}\)-kelvin
Calculation Type \(=\mathrm{SP}\)
Calculation Method \(=\) RwB97XD
Formula \(=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}\)
Basis Set \(=6-311+G(d, p)\)
Charge \(=0\)
Spin \(=\) Singlet
Solvation \(=\) scrf \(=\) solvent \(=\) chlorobenzene
\(E(\) RwB97XD \()=-1579.56\) Hartree
01
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & -3.13588600 & -2.79637100 & 0.00039200\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -1.93038400 & -2.10330800 & 0.00039900\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & -4.36135300 & -2.12340500 & 0.00007100\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & -4.37079300 & -0.73432300 & -0.00021300\end{array}\)
\(\mathrm{H} \quad-5.29542600 \quad-2.67572300 \quad 0.00012600\)
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & -5.30540900 & -0.18205600 & -0.00044400\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{llll}\text { C } & -3.15392300 & -0.05511700 & -0.00023700\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -1.88437600 & -0.69598700 & 0.00005100\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{S} & -3.02982400 & 1.69612700 & -0.00025600\end{array}\)
```

| C | -0.76784200 | 0.26972500 | 0.00009400 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | :---: |
| C | -1.28931300 | 1.56359700 | -0.00002600 |
| C | 2.59878500 | -3.18542500 | -0.00009600 |
| C | 1.50662800 | -2.33100500 | 0.00000900 |
| C | 3.90912400 | -2.68545300 | -0.00025500 |
| C | 4.11879200 | -1.31618900 | -0.00025200 |
| H | 4.75482500 | -3.36602100 | -0.00034400 |
| H | 5.12341200 | -0.90488600 | -0.00027000 |
| C | 3.01192500 | -0.45987400 | -0.00014700 |
| C | 1.66672000 | -0.92974600 | -0.00009200 |
| S | 3.13719400 | 1.27876700 | 0.00011800 |
| C | 0.70145200 | 0.18242100 | -0.00001000 |
| C | 1.40240100 | 1.39297900 | 0.00015800 |
| N | -0.54673500 | 2.70824200 | -0.00016700 |
| H | -0.99103100 | 3.61821700 | -0.00034500 |
| C | 0.84546200 | 2.72681600 | 0.00019600 |
| O | 1.47542100 | 3.78016000 | 0.00036700 |
| H | -3.11538400 | -3.88182800 | 0.00069200 |
| H | -1.02888100 | -2.68700200 | 0.00065400 |
| H | 0.52940800 | -2.77623900 | 0.00012900 |
| H | 2.42982200 | -4.25773600 | -0.00001700 |

(2) Ground state $1[(M)-1 \mathrm{n}]$


Calculation Method = RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$

Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
$E($ RB3LYP $)=-1579.6389$ Hartree
RMS Gradient Norm $=2.6809 \mathrm{e}-05$ Hartree/Bohr
Imaginary Freq $=0$
Imaginary Freq $=0$
Temperature $=298.15$ Kelvin
Pressure $=1$ atm

Electronic Energy $(E E)=-1579.6389$ Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.215429$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.230577$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.231521$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.173132$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-1579.4235$ Hartree
EE + Thermal Energy Correction $=-1579.4083$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-1579.4074$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-1579.4658$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=144.689 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=62.334 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$
Entropy $(S)=122.89 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-k e l v i n$

01
C $\quad-2.97561200 \quad-2.73849900 \quad-0.57433200$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -1.79852800 & -2.00165300 & -0.49436300\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & -4.21513800 & -2.15732300 & -0.27866800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}C & -4.28699600 & -0.80799300 & 0.05479000\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & -5.12408100 & -2.74733700 & -0.33859000\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{H} & -5.24450600 & -0.33071600 & 0.23839500\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -3.10365800 & -0.07498700 & 0.12126400\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & -1.82601700 & -0.65204900 & -0.09476000\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{S} & -3.01505500 & 1.67025400 & 0.37680300\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -0.75023300 & 0.32767900 & 0.03604800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -1.27406500 & 1.60363200 & 0.19189200\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 2.39653700 & -3.15379800 & 0.53650200\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 1.35341300 & -2.24209800 & 0.46279400\end{array}$

| C | 3.71651700 | -2.76305000 | 0.25653700 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| C | 4.00585400 | -1.44080700 | -0.05057300 |
| H | 4.51996200 | -3.49126600 | 0.31026500 |
| H | 5.02883900 | -1.12055600 | -0.22134200 |
| C | 2.95574100 | -0.51765400 | -0.10634300 |
| C | 1.60303900 | -0.90475900 | 0.09201900 |
| S | 3.14445200 | 1.21123800 | -0.32212100 |
| C | 0.69788100 | 0.23334800 | -0.02013300 |
| C | 1.41854400 | 1.41630700 | -0.16283300 |
| N | -0.51391300 | 2.73847500 | 0.17470700 |
| H | -0.93520500 | 3.65344100 | 0.27742700 |
| C | 0.86444900 | 2.75248900 | -0.09215400 |
| O | 1.48023600 | 3.80826900 | -0.19035800 |
| H | -2.92946200 | -3.77758200 | -0.88567700 |
| H | -0.86498400 | -2.46429300 | -0.78325300 |
| H | 0.35451300 | -2.55490200 | 0.73364000 |
| H | 2.18972100 | -4.17883900 | 0.82799800 |

## (3) Ground state $2[(P)-1 n]$

Calculation Method $=$ RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
$\mathrm{E}($ RB3LYP $)=-1579.6389$ Hartree
Imaginary Freq $=0$
Temperature $=298.15$ Kelvin
Pressure $=1 \mathrm{~atm}$

Electronic Energy (EE) =-1579.6389 Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.215429$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.230577$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.231521$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.173132$ Hartree
EE + Zero-point Energy $=-1579.4235$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Energy Correction $=-1579.4083$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-1579.4074$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-1579.4658$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=144.689 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=62.335 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$
Entropy $(S)=122.89 \mathrm{cal} /$ mol-kelvin

Calculation Type $=$ SP
Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{17} \mathrm{H}_{9} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ scrf $=$ solvent $=$ chlorobenzene
$E($ RwB97XD $)=-1579.5659$ Hartree

01
$\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & -2.97561900 & -2.73849600 & 0.57433900\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -1.79853200 & -2.00165500 & 0.49436300\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & -4.21514400 & -2.15732000 & 0.27867400\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -4.28699800 & -0.80799400 & -0.05479900\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & -5.12408800 & -2.74733300 & 0.33860100\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & -5.24450700 & -0.33071800 & -0.23840900\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -3.10366000 & -0.07499000 & -0.12127000\end{array}$
C $\quad-1.82601900 \quad-0.65205200 \quad 0.09475700$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{S} & -3.01505600 & 1.67025200 & -0.37680800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -0.75023500 & 0.32767800 & -0.03604600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -1.27406700 & 1.60363000 & -0.19189000\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 2.39655000 & -3.15379500 & -0.53650500\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}C & 1.35341900 & -2.24210300 & -0.46278800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 3.71652800 & -2.76304400 & -0.25654500\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 4.00585800 & -1.44080300 & 0.05057700\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 4.51997700 & -3.49125500 & -0.31027700\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 5.02884200 & -1.12054800 & 0.22134800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 2.95574300 & -0.51765200 & 0.10634600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 1.60304100 & -0.90476100 & -0.09201700\end{array}$

| S | 3.14445000 | 1.21124000 | 0.32212100 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | :--- |
| C | 0.69788200 | 0.23334600 | 0.02013200 |
| C | 1.41854300 | 1.41630600 | 0.16282900 |
| N | -0.51391600 | 2.73847600 | -0.17469900 |
| H | -0.93521300 | 3.65344100 | -0.27741200 |
| C | 0.86444600 | 2.75248800 | 0.09215200 |
| O | 1.48023600 | 3.80826700 | 0.19036000 |
| H | -2.92947000 | -3.77757300 | 0.88570100 |
| H | -0.86499000 | -2.46430200 | 0.78324200 |
| H | 0.35452200 | -2.55491700 | -0.73362000 |
| H | 2.18973600 | -4.17883200 | -0.82801400 |

## 1b

(1) Transition state


Calculation Method $=$ RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 \mathrm{G}(\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin = Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
$E($ RB3LYP $)=-1886.8609$ Hartree
Imaginary Freq $=1$
Temperature $=298.15$ Kelvin
Pressure $=1 \mathrm{~atm}$

Electronic Energy (EE) =-1886.8609 Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.307594$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.327346$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.32829$ Hartree

Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.260559$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-1886.5533$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Energy Correction $=-1886.5336$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-1886.5326$ Hartree
EE + Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-1886.6004$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=205.413 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=84.055 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-$ kelvin
Entropy $(S)=142.553 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$

Calculation Type $=$ SP
Calculation Method $=$ RwB97XD
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-311+G(d, p)$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ scrf $=$ solvent $=$ chlorobenzene
$E($ RwB97XD $)=-1886.7481$ Hartree

01
$\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{H} & 5.67172900 & -0.91835800 & 0.59791800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & 4.72183400 & -0.40685700 & 0.47594200\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 5.37757400 & 0.77167600 & -1.19075100\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 4.55185900 & 0.51790700 & -0.53132100\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}C & 2.45345700 & -0.00846700 & 1.22053100\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 3.33414900 & 1.23031300 & -0.67288600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 3.67797600 & -0.62075300 & 1.39696300\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{C} & 2.20400900 & 0.86264300 & 0.13809600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 3.28470400 & 2.40689700 & -1.47341900\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 3.84138000 & -1.25827700 & 2.26024200\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 1.68516600 & -0.11515100 & 1.97089500\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 2.22729000 & 3.26696600 & -1.34405200\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 4.14027000 & 2.66645500 & -2.08958800\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{H} & 2.22505200 & 4.23802600 & -1.82873100\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 1.10351300 & 2.84903400 & -0.59705600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & 0.95452000 & 1.57517700 & -0.02658000\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{S} & -0.25318900 & 3.90224000 & -0.25702800\end{array}$

| C | -0.44160100 | 1.32721100 | 0.42715700 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| C | -1.10023000 | 2.56166000 | 0.46900700 |
| H | 2.38551800 | -5.19194400 | 0.55970500 |
| C | 1.65259900 | -4.39984800 | 0.44100400 |
| H | 0.72384700 | -5.28466000 | -1.27850000 |
| C | 0.74194800 | -4.44023500 | -0.59465000 |
| C | 0.66254400 | -2.33314700 | 1.22172300 |
| C | -0.25074400 | -3.44020200 | -0.73258700 |
| C | 1.56522800 | -3.36643600 | 1.39098700 |
| C | -0.20896700 | -2.28061500 | 0.11433200 |
| C | -1.38700200 | -3.67331500 | -1.56536000 |
| H | 2.19776200 | -3.38808900 | 2.27303500 |
| H | 0.54549300 | -1.59057900 | 1.99704000 |
| C | -2.50046300 | -2.89339500 | -1.42851000 |
| H | -1.39679200 | -4.54626100 | -2.21151400 |
| H | -3.42756600 | -3.13559700 | -1.93802400 |
| C | -2.42218700 | -1.72317100 | -0.63124100 |
| C | -1.22710700 | -1.25876100 | -0.04515600 |
| S | -3.79527500 | -0.71992600 | -0.28086600 |
| C | -1.36497200 | 0.14815300 | 0.39312800 |
| C | -2.73534200 | 0.45767800 | 0.42862700 |
| N | -2.41313600 | 2.74848200 | 0.80486400 |
| H | -2.80369900 | 3.68136600 | 0.85854600 |
| C | -3.35079300 | 1.72084700 | 0.76795300 |
| O | -4.54695900 | 1.92990800 | 0.94202500 |

(2) Ground state $1[(P)-1 b]$


Calculation Method $=$ RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$
Basis Set $=6-31 G(\mathrm{~d}, \mathrm{p})$
Charge $=0$
Spin $=$ Singlet
Solvation $=$ None
$E($ RB3LYP $)=-1886.9162$ Hartree
Imaginary Freq $=0$
Temperature $=$ 298.15 Kelvin
Pressure $=1 \mathrm{~atm}$

Electronic Energy $(E E)=-1886.9162$ Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction $=0.308501$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy $=0.329051$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy $=0.329995$ Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy $=0.260135$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Zero-point Energy $=-1886.6077$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Energy Correction $=-1886.5872$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Enthalpy Correction $=-1886.5862$ Hartree
$\mathrm{EE}+$ Thermal Free Energy Correction $=-1886.6561$ Hartree
$\mathrm{E}($ Thermal $)=206.483 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}$
Heat Capacity $(\mathrm{Cv})=85.944 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$
Entropy $(S)=147.034 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}$

01

| H | 4.05515800 | 2.90981800 | 2.38089500 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| C | 3.52125200 | 2.09349700 | 1.90377900 |
| H | 5.28316400 | 1.22235400 | 1.05025400 |
| C | 4.20333500 | 1.15989200 | 1.15656900 |
| C | 1.43407200 | 0.94602900 | 1.45767000 |
| C | 3.52663300 | 0.07567900 | 0.53946900 |
| C | 2.12632900 | 1.96660800 | 2.07452900 |
| C | 2.09661100 | -0.00788100 | 0.64368900 |
| C | 4.26138400 | -0.95282900 | -0.11776200 |
| H | 1.59161400 | 2.67544800 | 2.69947400 |
| H | 0.36820500 | 0.85728700 | 1.61827800 |


| C | 3.63129000 | -2.07708300 | -0.58682500 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| H | 5.34116900 | -0.86066300 | -0.18896000 |
| H | 4.19533200 | -2.89860500 | -1.01677500 |
| C | 2.22630900 | -2.15005300 | -0.49122900 |
| C | 1.42317000 | -1.10729200 | -0.00392900 |
| S | 1.29922700 | -3.59595700 | -0.88140900 |
| C | -0.00153000 | -1.42259100 | -0.11720600 |
| C | -0.17024300 | -2.76883400 | -0.42553100 |
| H | 0.97461900 | 4.91981800 | -2.27411000 |
| C | 0.46210200 | 4.07411700 | -1.82578400 |
| H | -1.10480500 | 5.26328200 | -0.97269000 |
| C | -0.68976700 | 4.26619700 | -1.09416200 |
| C | 0.32210500 | 1.68549700 | -1.43720100 |
| C | -1.38040300 | 3.17231000 | -0.51512200 |
| C | 0.95417700 | 2.76740100 | -2.01670900 |
| C | -0.83722300 | 1.85081700 | -0.64051500 |
| C | -2.63940400 | 3.37355000 | 0.12766200 |
| H | 1.83689000 | 2.60630900 | -2.62816800 |
| H | 0.70649400 | 0.69074800 | -1.61616200 |
| C | -3.39319800 | 2.31543600 | 0.55775200 |
| H | -3.02020200 | 4.38713000 | 0.21666300 |
| H | -4.38369400 | 2.46419700 | 0.97548800 |
| C | -2.86139000 | 1.00934800 | 0.43788600 |
| C | -1.55765600 | 0.75515200 | -0.03153600 |
| S | -3.77051800 | -0.44155000 | 0.77752200 |
| C | -1.23718100 | -0.66469300 | 0.06243100 |
| C | -2.38505900 | -1.40471700 | 0.35698500 |
| N | -1.36993500 | -3.41902800 | -0.34660800 |
| H | -1.44535400 | -4.40723000 | -0.55307300 |
| C | -2.52892100 | -2.83624800 | 0.19142700 |
| O | -3.53864600 | -3.50155300 | 0.39491300 |
|  |  |  |  |

## (3) Ground state 2 [(M)-1b]

Calculation Method = RB3LYP
Formula $=\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}$

```
Basis Set \(=6-31 G(d, p)\)
Charge \(=0\)
Spin \(=\) Singlet
Solvation = None
\(E(\) RB3LYP \()=-1886.9162\) Hartree
Imaginary Freq \(=0\)
Temperature \(=298.15\) Kelvin
Pressure \(=1\) atm
Electronic Energy \((\mathrm{EE})=-1886.9162\) Hartree
Zero-point Energy Correction \(=0.3085\) Hartree
Thermal Correction to Energy \(=0.329049\) Hartree
Thermal Correction to Enthalpy \(=0.329993\) Hartree
Thermal Correction to Free Energy \(=0.26014\) Hartree
EE + Zero-point Energy \(=-1886.6077\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{EE}+\) Thermal Energy Correction \(=-1886.5872\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{EE}+\) Thermal Enthalpy Correction \(=-1886.5862\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{EE}+\) Thermal Free Energy Correction \(=-1886.6561\) Hartree
\(\mathrm{E}(\) Thermal \()=206.481 \mathrm{kcal} / \mathrm{mol}\)
Heat Capacity \((\mathrm{Cv})=85.943 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\mathrm{kelvin}\)
Entropy \((S)=147.019 \mathrm{cal} / \mathrm{mol}-\) kelvin
Calculation Type \(=\mathrm{SP}\)
Calculation Method \(=\) RwB97XD
Formula \(=\mathrm{C}_{25} \mathrm{H}_{13} \mathrm{NOS}_{2}\)
Basis Set \(=6-311+G(d, p)\)
Charge \(=0\)
Spin \(=\) Singlet
Solvation \(=s c r f=\) solvent \(=\) chlorobenzene
\(E(\) RwB97XD \()=-1886.8055\) Hartree
01
\begin{tabular}{llll}
H & -4.05837000 & 2.90527900 & 2.37974600
\end{tabular}
\(\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{C} & -3.52343700 & 2.08944200 & 1.90294200\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{H} & -5.28443500 & 1.21584100 & 1.05012000\end{array}\)
\(\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{C} & -4.20452700 & 1.15469600 & 1.15619800\end{array}\)
```

| C | -1.43488300 | 0.94432000 | 1.45711700 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| C | -3.52655000 | 0.07106600 | 0.53944100 |
| C | -2.12832700 | 1.96431700 | 2.07360100 |
| C | -2.09638100 | -0.01066300 | 0.64355300 |
| C | -4.26006800 | -0.95867500 | -0.11736200 |
| H | -1.59430900 | 2.67405400 | 2.69811200 |
| H | -0.36889200 | 0.85691100 | 1.61772600 |
| C | -3.62847200 | -2.08227100 | -0.58604300 |
| H | -5.33996800 | -0.86809200 | -0.18848200 |
| H | -4.19152900 | -2.90468500 | -1.01560900 |
| C | -2.22339700 | -2.15342800 | -0.49053900 |
| C | -1.42159600 | -1.10937400 | -0.00373900 |
| S | -1.29424700 | -3.59794200 | -0.88118100 |
| C | 0.00356300 | -1.42259400 | -0.11725300 |
| C | 0.17412400 | -2.76866700 | -0.42562000 |
| H | -0.98306700 | 4.91832000 | -2.27237300 |
| C | -0.46900000 | 4.07327000 | -1.82458300 |
| H | 1.09637300 | 5.26484500 | -0.97208700 |
| C | 0.68296000 | 4.26709600 | -1.09348800 |
| C | -0.32489800 | 1.68476600 | -1.43670900 |
| C | 1.37563500 | 3.17418600 | -0.51502800 |
| C | -0.95903000 | 2.76579800 | -2.01561200 |
| C | 0.83450100 | 1.85184100 | -0.64051300 |
| C | 2.63473500 | 3.37719100 | 0.12716400 |
| H | -1.84179100 | 2.60330900 | -2.62662400 |
| H | -0.70770800 | 0.68941700 | -1.61582000 |
| C | 3.39024200 | 2.32005400 | 0.55668400 |
| H | 3.01421700 | 4.39124300 | 0.21613100 |
| H | 4.38082400 | 2.47020900 | 0.97374600 |
| C | 2.86024000 | 1.01317900 | 0.43712400 |
| C | 1.55668700 | 0.75716900 | -0.03192600 |
| S | 3.77141600 | -0.43645100 | 0.77682100 |
| C | 1.23807200 | -0.66307800 | 0.06242900 |
| W | 2.38705900 | -1.40142500 | 0.35700800 |
|  | 1.37475700 | -3.41712300 | -0.34649200 |
| 1.45142500 | -4.40552000 | -0.55166200 |  |

$\begin{array}{lllll}\text { C } & 2.53294500 & -2.83275200 & 0.19158600\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{lllll}\mathrm{O} & 3.54350300 & -3.49672300 & 0.39546100\end{array}$

## Acknowledgements

First and foremost, I am much obliged to Professor Takeo Kawabata (Kyoto University) for his guidance and encouragement in my academic and life. A special and sincere acknowledgement is given to him for great assistance in my study and also as a good role model in my future. The acquisition of independent thinking ability, diligent work attitude and many other corrections for my poor habits from him will be the most precious treasure in the rest of my life. I will never forget about it and keep his teaching and instructions in mind always.
I am also extremely grateful to Professor Takumi Furuta (Kyoto Pharmaceutical University) whose profound chemical knowledge, sophisticated experimental skills and meticulous work attitude have impressed me. Special thanks to his personal guidance to my research and kind care for my life. His encouragement and support are indispensable in the four years' life. I am especially grateful for his patience and kindness for my frequent interruptions.
I would like to express high appreciation to Assistant Professor Yoshihiro Ueda (Kyoto University), Assistant Professor Kazuhiro Morisaki (Kyoto University) for useful discussions. Their kind assistance for my daily life in laboratory is also highly appreciated, which helps me a lot to live a fulfilling and enjoyable life.
I am very thankful that Assistant Professor Shohei Hamada (Kyoto Pharmaceutical University) gives me lots of suggestions about my research topics and assistance for my experiments.
It is highly appreciated that Associate Professor Yusuke Kobayashi (Kyoto Pharmaceutical University) has done a plenty of perfect DFT calculation work and taught me a lot.
I am also much obliged to Professor Norihiro Tokitoh (Kyoto University) and Professor Takahiro Sasamori (University of Tsukuba) for their excellent X-Ray analysis of my compounds and valuable suggestions for the structural analysis.
I would like to sincerely express my gratitude to Professor Kiyosei Takasu (Kyoto University) and Professor Hiroaki Ohno (Kyoto University) for reviewing my thesis and providing valuable comments.
I would like to thank Mr. Takuya Murai and Miss Mayu Kurokawa for their contributions to the direct one-pot cyclization project. I am particularly grateful to Mr. Masanori Nikaido and Mr. Toshifumi Kuribayashi for their previous nice work in the synthesis of helicene-like molecules. I gratefully thank Mr. Chen Gong and Miss Wang Shuo who help me a lot when I just join the group. I am thankful to all of the members in Kawabata group and especially our secretary Ms. Kaori Hashimoto for her support to my daily life.

I would like to express my gratitude to CSC China Scholarship Council for financial supports.
I express my deep gratitude to my parents for all they have done for me. Their kind understanding and constant encouragement always support me to go forwards powerfully.

